

LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OUGE, Ph.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

COPYRIGHT, 1909, 1911 BY BENJAMIN L. D'OUGE

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED
013.4

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY · PROPRIETORS ·
BOSTON · U.S.A.

[Preface](#)

[Display Problems](#)

[Pronunciation](#)

[Lessons I-LX: Words and Forms](#)

[Lessons LXI-LXXIX: Constructions](#)

READING MATTER

Introductory Suggestions [194-195](#)

The Labors of Hercules [196-203](#)

P. Cornelius Lentulus: The Story of a Roman Boy [204-215](#)

APPENDIXES AND VOCABULARIES

Appendix I. Tables of Declensions, Conjugations, Numerals, etc. [226-260](#)

Appendix II. Rules of Syntax [261-264](#)

Appendix III. Reviews [265-282](#)

Special Vocabularies [283-298](#)

Latin-English Vocabulary	299-331
English-Latin Vocabulary	332-343
INDEX	344-348
194	

READING MATTER

INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS

How to Translate. You have already had considerable practice in translating simple Latin, and have learned that the guide to the meaning lies in the endings of the words. If these are neglected, no skill can make sense of the Latin. If they are carefully noted and accurately translated, not many difficulties remain. Observe the following suggestions:

1. Read the Latin sentence through to the end, noting endings of nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc.
2. Read it again and see if any of the words you know are nominatives or accusatives. This will often give you what may be called the backbone of the sentence; that is, subject, verb, and object.
3. Look up the words you do not know, and determine their use in the sentence from their endings.
4. If you cannot yet translate the sentence, put down the English meanings of all the words *in the same order as the Latin words*. You will then generally see through the meaning of the sentence.
5. Be careful to
 - a. Translate adjectives with the nouns to which they belong.
 - b. Translate together prepositions and the nouns which they govern.
 - c. Translate adverbs with the words that they modify.
 - d. *Make sense*. If you do not make sense, you have made a mistake. One mistake will spoil a whole sentence.
6. When the sentence is correctly translated, read the Latin over again, and try to understand it as Latin, without thinking of the English translation.

195 The Parts of a Sentence. You will now meet somewhat longer sentences than you have had before. To assist in translating them, remember, first of all, that every sentence conveys a meaning and either tells us something, asks a question, or gives a command. Every sentence must have a subject and a verb, and the verb may always have an adverb, and, if transitive, will have a direct object.

However long a sentence is, you will usually be able to recognize its subject, verb, and object or predicate complement without any difficulty. These will give you the leading thought, and they must never be lost sight of while making out the rest of the sentence. The chief difficulty in translating arises from the fact that instead of a single adjective, adverb, or noun, we often have a phrase or a clause taking the place of one of these; for Latin, like English, has adjective, adverbial, and substantive clauses and phrases. For example, in the sentence *The idle boy does not study*, the word *idle* is an adjective. In *The boy wasting his time does not study*, the words *wasting his time* form an adjective phrase modifying *boy*. In the sentence *The boy who wastes his time does not study*, the words *who wastes his time* form an adjective clause modifying *boy*, and the sentence is complex. These sentences would show the same structure in Latin.

In translating, it is important to keep the parts of a phrase and the parts of a clause together and not let them become confused with the principal sentence. To distinguish between the subordinate clauses and the principal sentence is of the first importance, and is not difficult if you remember that a clause regularly contains a word that marks it as a clause and that this word usually stands first. These words join clauses to the words they depend on, and are called *subordinate conjunctions*. They are not very numerous, and you will soon learn to recognize them. In Latin they are the equivalents for such words as *when, while, since, because, if, before, after, though, in order that, that*, etc. Form the habit of memorizing the Latin subordinate conjunctions as you meet them, and of noting carefully the mood of the verb in the clauses which they introduce.



196
HERCULES

Hercules, a Greek hero celebrated for his great strength, was pursued throughout his life by the hatred of Juno. While yet an infant he strangled some serpents sent by the goddess to destroy him. During his boyhood and youth he performed various marvelous feats of strength, and on reaching manhood he succeeded in delivering the Thebans from the oppression of the Minyæ. In a fit of madness, sent upon him by Juno, he slew his own children; and, on consulting the Delphic oracle as to how he should cleanse himself from this crime, he was ordered to submit himself for twelve years to Eurystheus, king of Tiryns, and to perform whatever tasks were appointed him. Hercules obeyed the oracle, and during the twelve years of his servitude accomplished twelve extraordinary feats known as the Labors of Hercules. His death was caused, unintentionally, by his wife Deianira. Hercules had shot with his poisoned arrows a centaur named Nessus, who had insulted Deianira. Nessus, before he died, gave some of his blood to Deianira, and told her it would act as a charm to secure her husband's love. Some time after, Deianira, wishing to try the charm, soaked one of her husband's garments in the blood, not knowing that it was poisoned. Hercules put on the robe, and, after suffering terrible torments, died, or was carried off by his father Jupiter.

LIII.1 THE INFANT HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS



HERCULES ET SERPENTES

Dī grave supplicium sūmmit de malīs, sed ī quī lēgibus³ deōrum pārent, etiam post mortem cūrantur. Illa vīta dīs² erat grātissima quae hominibus miserīs ūtilissima fuerat. Omnium autem praemiōrum summum erat immortālītās. Illud praemium Herculī datum est.

Herculis pater fuit Iuppiter, māter Alcmēna, et omnium hominum validissimus fuisse dīcitur. Sed Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum, eum, adhūc 198 infantem, interficere studēbat; nam eī⁴ et⁵ Herculēs et Alcmēna erant invīsī. Itaque mīsit duās serpentīs, utramque saevissimam, quae mediā nocte domum⁶ Alcmēnae vērunt. Ibi Herculēs, cum frātre suō, nōn in lectulō sed in scūtō ingentī dormiēbat. Iam audācēs serpentēs adpropinquāverant, iam scūtum movēbant. Tum frāter, terrōre commōtus, magnā vōce mātrem vocāvit, sed Herculēs ipse, fortior quam frāter, statim ingentīs serpentīs manibus suīs rapuit et interfēcit.

1. This number refers to the lesson after which the selection may be read.

2. **Dī** and **dīs** are from **deus**. Cf. [§ 468](#).
3. **lēgibus**, [§ 501. 14](#).
4. **eī**, *to her*, referring to Juno.
5. **et ... et**, *both ... and*.
6. **domum**, [§ 501. 20](#).

LIV. HERCULES CONQUERS THE MINYÆ

Herculēs ā puerō¹ corpus suum gravissimīs et difficillimīs labōribus exercēbat et hōc modō virēs² suās cōfirmāvit. Iam adulēscēns Thēbīs³ habitābat. Ibi Creōn quīdam erat rēx. Minyae, gēns validissima, erant finitimī Thēbānīs, et, quia ōlim Thēbānōs vīcerant, quotannīs lēgātōs mittēbant et vectīgal postulābant. Herculēs autem cōstituit cīvīs suōs hōc vectīgālī līberāre et dixit rēgī, “Dā mihi exercitum tuum et ego hōs superbōs hostīs superābō.” Hanc condiōnem rēx nōn recūsāvit, et Herculēs nūntiōs in omnīs partis dīmīsit et cōpiās coēgit.⁴ Tum tempore opportūnissimō proelium cum Minyīs commīsit. Diū pugnātum est, sed dēnique illī impetum Thēbānōrum sustinēre nōn potuērunt et terga vertērunt fugamque cēpērunt.

1. **ā puerō**, *from boyhood*.
2. **virēs**, from **vīs**. Cf. [§ 468](#).
3. **Thēbīs**, [§ 501. 36. 1](#).
4. **coēgit**, from **cōgō**.

HE COMMITS A CRIME AND GOES TO THE DELPHIAN ORACLE TO SEEK EXPIATION

Post hoc proelium Creōn rēx, tantā victōriā laetus, fīliam suam Herculī in mātrimōnium dedit. Thēbīs Herculēs cum uxōre suā diū vīvēbat et ab omnibus magnopere amābātur; sed post multōs annōs subitō¹ in furōrem incidit et ipse suā manū liberōs suōs interfēcit. Post breve tempus² ad sānitātem reductus tantum scelus expiāre cupiēbat et cōstituit ad ōrāculum Delphicum iter facere. Hoc autem ōrāculum erat omnium clārissimum. Ibi sedēbat fēmina quaedam quae Pŷthia appellābātur. Ea cōnsilium dabat iīs quī ad ōrāculum veniēbant.

1. **in furōrem incidit**, *went mad*.
2. **ad sānitātem reductus**, lit. *led back to sanity*. What in good English?



199

HERCULES LEONEM SUPERAT

LV. HERCULES BECOMES SUBJECT TO EURYSTHEUS1 · HE STRANGLES THE NEMEA'AN LION

Itaque Herculēs Pŷthiae tōtam rem dēmonstrāvīt nec scelus suum abdidit. Ubi iam Herculēs finem fēcīt, Pŷthia iussit eum ad urbem Tīryntha2 discēdere et ibi rēgī Eurystheō sēsē committere. Quae3 ubi audīvit, Herculēs ad illam urbem statim contendit et Eurystheō sē in servitūtem trādīdit et dīxit, “Quid prīmum, Ō rēx, mē facere iubēs?” Eurystheus, quī perterrēbātur vī et corpore ingentī Herculis et eum occidī4 studēbat, ita respondit: “Audī, Herculēs! Multa mira5 nārrantur dē leōne saevissimō quī hōc tempore in valle Nemaēā omnia vāstat. Iubeō tē, virōrum omnium fortissimum, illō mōnstrō hominēs liberāre.” Haec verba Herculī maximē placuērunt. “Properābo,” inquit, 200 “et parēbō imperiō6 tuō.” Tum in silvās in quibus leō habitābat statim iter fēcīt. Mox feram vīdit et plūrīs impetūs fēcīt; frūstrā tamen, quod neque sagittīs neque ūllō aliō tēlō mōnstrum vulnerāre potuit. Dēnique Herculēs saevum leōnem suīs ingentibus bracchiīs rapuit et faucīs eius omnibus vīribus compressit. Hōc modō brevī tempore eum interfēcīt. Tum corpus leōnis ad oppidum in umerīs reportāvīt et pellem postea prō7 veste gerēbat. Omnēs autem quō eam regiōnem incolēbant, ubi fāmam dē morte leōnis ingentis accēpērunt, erant laetissimī et Herculem laudābant verbīs amplissimīs.

1. **Eu-rys'theus** (pronounced *U-ris'thūs*) was king of *Tī'ryns*, a Grecian city, whose foundation goes back to prehistoric times.

2. **Tīryntha**, the acc. case of **Tīryns**, a Greek noun.

3. **Quae**, obj. of **audīvit**. It is placed first to make a close connection with the preceding sentence. This is called a connecting relative.

4. **occidī**, pres. pass. infin.

5. **mīra**, *marvelous things*, the adj. being used as a noun. Cf. **omnia**, in the next line.

6. **imperiō**, § 501. 14.

7. **prō**, *for, instead of*.

LVI. SLAYING THE LERNE'AN HYDRA

Deinde Herculēs ab Eurystheō iussus est Hydram occīdere. Itaque cum amīcō Iolāō¹ contendit ad palūdem Lernaeam ubi Hydra incolēbat. Hoc autem mōnstrum erat serpēns ingēns quae novem capita habēbat. Mox is mōnstrum repperit et summō² cum periculō collum eius sinistrā manū rapuit et tenuit. Tum dextrā manū capita novem abscīdere incēpit, sed frūstrā labōrābat, quod quotiēns hoc fēcerat totiēns alia nova capita vidēbat. Quod³ ubi vīdit, statuit capita ignī cremāre. Hōc modō octō capita dēlēvit, sed extrēmum caput vulnerārī nōn potuit, quod erat immortāle. Itaque illud sub ingentī saxō Herculēs posuit et ita victōriam reportāvit.

1. **Iolāō**, abl. of *I-o-lā'us*, the hero's best friend.
2. Note the emphatic position of this adjective.
3. **Quod ubi**, *when he saw this*, another instance of the connecting relative. Cf. p. 199, l. 3.

LVII. THE ARCADIAN STAG AND THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR

Postquam Eurystheō mors Hydrae nuntiata est, summus terror animum eius occupavit. Itaque iussit Herculem capere et ad sē reportāre cervum quendam; nam minimē cupīvit tantum vīrum in rēgnō suō tenēre. Hie autem cervus dīcēbātur aurea cornua et pedēs multō¹ celeriōrēs ventō² habēre. Prīmum Herculēs vestīgia animālis petīvit, deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vīdit, omnibus vīribus currere incēpit. Per plūrimōs diēs contendit nec noctū cessāvit. Dēnique postquam per 201 tōtum annum cucurrerat—ita dīcitur—cervum iam dēfessum cēpit et ad Eurystheum portāvit.

Tum vērō iussus est Herculēs aprum quendam capere quī illō tempore agrōs Erymanthiōs vāstābat et hominēs illiūs locī magnopere perterrēbat. Herculēs laetē negōtium suscēpit et in Arcadiam celeriter sē recēpit. Ibi mox aprum repperit. Ille autem; simul atque Herculem vīdit, statim quam³ celerrimē fūgit et metū perterritus in fossam altam sēsē abdidit. Herculēs tamen summā cum difficultāte eum extrāxit, nec aper ūllō modō sēsē liberāre potuit, et vīvus ad Eurystheum portātus est.

1. **multō**, § 501. 27.
2. **ventō**, § 501. 34.
3. **quam**. What is the force of **quam** with a superlative?

LVIII. HERCULES CLEANS THE AUGE'AN STABLES AND KILLS THE STYMPHALIAN BIRDS

Deinde Eurystheus Herculī hunc labōrem multō graviōrem imperāvit. Augēās¹ quīdam, quī illō tempore rēgnum Ēlidis² obtinēbat, tria mīlia boum³ habēbat. Hī⁴ ingentī stabulō continēbantur. Hoc stabulum, quod per trīgintā annōs nōn pūrgātum erat, Herculēs intrā spatium ūnīus diēi pūrgāre iussus est. Ille negōtium alacriter suscēpit, et prīmum labōre gravissimō maximam fossam fōdit per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus ad mūrum stabulī dūxit. Tum partem parvam mūrī dēlēvit et aquam in stabulum immīsīt. Hōc modō finm operis fēcit ūnō diē facillimē.

Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphālum iter fēcit; nam Eurystheus iusserat eum avis Stymphālidēs occīdere. Hae avēs rōstra ferrea habēbant et hominēs miserōs dēvorābant. Ille, postquam ad locum pervēnit, lacum vīdit in quō avēs incolēbant. Nullō tamen modō Herculēs avibus adpropinquāre potuit; lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē līmō cōnstitit.⁵ Dēnique autem avēs 6dē aliquā causā perterritae in aurās volāvērunt et magna pars eārum sagittīs Herculis occīsa est.

1. **Augēās**, pronounced in English *Aw-jē'as*.
2. **Ēlidis**, gen. case of **Ēlis**, a district of Greece.
3. **boum**, gen. plur. of **bōs**. For construction see [§ 501. 11](#).
4. **ingentī stabulō**, abl. of means, but in our idiom we should say *in a huge stable*.
5. **cōstitit**, from **consto**.
6. **dē aliqūā causā perterritae**, *frightened for some reason*.



202

HERCULES ET TAURUS

[LIX.](#) HERCULES CAPTURES THE CRETAN BULL AND CARRIES HIM LIVING TO EURYSTHEUS

Tum Eurystheus iussit Herculem portāre vīvum ex īnsulā Crētā taurum quendam saevissimum. Ille igitur nāvem cōnscendit—nam ventus erat idōneus—atque statim solvit. Postquam trīduum nāvīgavit, incolumis īnsulae adpropinquāvit. Deinde, postquam omnia parāta sunt, contendit ad eam regiōnem quam taurus vexābat. Mox taurum vīdit ac sine ūllō metū cornua eius corripuit. Tum ingentī labōre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxit atque cum hāc praedā ex īnsulā discessit.

THE FLESH-EATING HORSES OF DIOMEDES

Postquam ex īnsulā Crētā domum pervēnit, Hercules ab Eurystheō in Thrāciam missus est. Ibi Diomēdēs quīdam, vir saevissimus, rēgnum obtinēbat et omnīs ā finibus suīs prohibēbat. Herculēs iussus erat equōs Diomedis rapere et ad Eurystheum dūcere. Hī autem equī hominēs miserrimōs dēvorābant dē quibus rēx supplicium sūmere cupiēbat. Herculēs ubi pervēnit, prīmum equōs ā rēge postulāvit, sed rēx eōs dēdere recūsāvit. Deinde ille īrā commōtus rēgem occīdit et corpus eius equīs trādīdit. Itaque is quī antea multōs necāverat, ipse eōdem supplicio necātus est. Et equī, nūper saevissima animālia, postquam dominī suī corpus dēvorāvērunt, mānsuētī erant.

203

[LX.](#) THE BELT OF HIPPOLYTE, QUEEN OF THE AMAZONS

Gēns Amāzonum¹ dīcitur² omnīnō ex mulieribus fuisse. Hae cum virīs proelium committere nōn verēbantur. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgīna, balteum habuit pulcherrimum. Hunc balteum possidēre filia Eurystheī vehementer cupiēbat. Itaque Eurystheus iussit Herculem impetum in Amāzonēs facere. Ille multīs cum cōpiīs nāvem cōnscendit et paucis diēbus in Amāzonum fīnīs pervēnit, ac balteum postulāvit. Eum trādere ipsa Hipporytē quidem cupīvit; reliquīs tamen Amazonibus³ persuādere nōn potuit. Postrīdiē Herculēs proelium commīsit. Multās hōrās utrimque quam fortissimē pugnātum est Dēnique tamen mulieres terga vertērunt et fugā salūtem petiērunt. Multae autem captae sunt, in quō numerō erat ipsa Hippolytē. Herculēs postquam balteum accēpit, omnibus captīvīs lībertātem dedit.

1. A fabled tribe of warlike women living in Asia Minor.
2. **omnīnō**, etc., *to have consisted entirely of women*.
3. **Amāzonibus**, [§ 501. 14](#).

THE DESCENT TO HADES AND THE DOG CERBERUS



HERCULES ET CERBERUS

Iamque ūnus modo ē duodecim labōribus relinquēbātur sed inter omnīs hic erat difficillimus. Iussus est enim canem Cerberum⁴ ex Orcō in lūcem trahere. Ex Orcō autem nēmō antea reverterat. Praetereā Cerberus erat mōnstrum maximē horribile et tria capita habēbat. Herculēs postquam imperia Eurystheī accēpit, statim profectus est et in Orcum dēscendit. Ibi vērō nōn sine summō periculō Cerberum manibus rapuit et ingentī cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et adurbem Eurystheī trāxit.

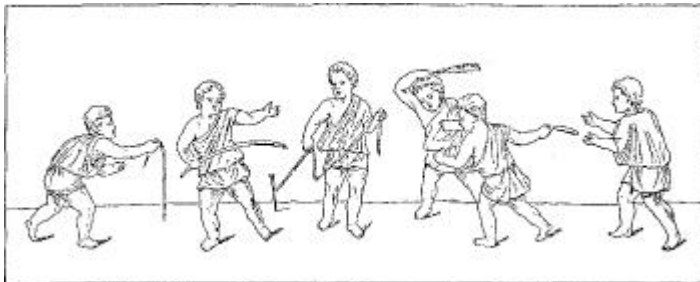
Sic duodecim laborēs illī⁵ intrā duodecim annōs cōnfectī sunt. Dēmum post longam vītam Herculēs ā deīs receptus est et Iuppiter filiō suō dedit immortalitātem.

4. The dog Cerberus guarded the gate of Orcus, the abode of the dead.

P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY1

LXI. PUBLIUS IS BORN NEAR POMPEII

P. Cornēlius Lentulus,2 adulescēns Rōmānus, amplissimā familiā3 nātus est; nam pater eius, Mārcus, erat dux perītissimus, cuius virtūte4 et cōnsiliō multae victōriae reportātae erant; atque mater eius, lūlia, ā clārissimīs maiōribus orta est. Nōn vērō in urbe sed rūrī5 Pūblius nātus est, et cum mātre habitābat in vīllā quae in maris lītore et sub radicibus magnī montis sita erat. Mōns autem erat Vesuvius et parva urbs Pompēiī octō mīlia6 passuum7 aberat. In Italiā antīquā erant plūrimae quidem villae et pulchrae, sed inter hās omnīs nūlla erat pulchrior quam villa Mārcī Iūliaeque. Frōns vīllae mūrō a maris fluctibus mūniēbātur. Hinc mare et lītora et īnsulae longē lātēque cōnspici8 ac saepe nāvēs longae et onerāriae poterant. Ā tergō et ab utrōque latere agrī ferācissimī patēbant. Undique erat magna variōrum flōrum cōpia et multa ingentium arborum genera quae aestāte9 umbram 205 dēfessīs agricolīs grātissimam adferēbant. Praetereā erant1 in agrīs stabulīsque multa animālium genera, nōn solum equī et bovēs sed etiam rārae avēs. Etiam erat10 magna piscīna plēna piscium; nam Rōmānī piscīs dīligenter colēbant.



PUERI ROMANI

1. This story is fiction with certain historical facts in Cæsar's career as a setting. However, the events chronicled might have happened, and no doubt did happen to many a Roman youth.
2. A Roman had three names, as, **Pūblius** (given name), **Cornēlius** (name of the *gēns* or clan), **Lentulus** (family name).
3. Abl. of source, which is akin to the abl. of separation (§ 501. 32).
4. **virtūte**, § 501. 24.
5. **rūrī**, § 501. 36. 1.
6. **mīlia**, § 501. 21.
7. **passuum**, § 501. 11.
8. **cōnspici**, infin. with poterant, § 215. Consult the map of Italy for the approximate location of the villa.
9. **aestāte**, § 501. 35.
10. How are the forms of **sum** translated when they precede the subject?

LXII. HIS LIFE ON THE FARM

Huius villae Dāvus, servus Mārcī, est vīlicus¹ et cum Lesbiā uxōre omnia cūrat. Vīlicus et uxor in casā humilī, mediīs in agrīs sitā, habitant. Ā prīmā lūce ūsque ad vesperum sē² gravibus labōribus exercent ut omnī rēs bene gerant.³ Plūrima enim sunt officia Dāvī et Lesbiae. Vīlicus servōs regit nē tardī sint⁴; mittit aliōs quī agrōs arent,⁴ aliōs quī hortōs inrigent,⁴ et opera in⁵ tōtum diem impōnit. Lesbia autem omnibus vestīmenta parat, cibum coquit, pānem facit.



CASA ROMANA

Nōn longē ab hōrum casā et in summō colle situm surgēbat domicilium ipsīus dominī dominaeque amplissimum. Ibi plūrīs annōs⁶ Pūblius cum mātrem vītā fēlicem agēbat; nam pater eius, Mārcus, in terrīs longinquīs gravia reī pūblīcae bella gerēbat nec domum⁷ revertī poterat. Neque puerō quidem molestum est rūrī⁸ vīvere. Eum multae rēs dēlectant. Magnopere amat silvās, agrōs, equōs, bovēs, gallīnās, avīs, reliquaque animālia. Saepe plūrīs hōrās⁹ ad mare sedet quō⁹ melius fluctūs et nāvīs spectet. Nec omnīnō sine comitibus erat, quod Lȳdia, Dāvī filia, quae erat eiusdem aetātis, cum eō adhūc infante lūdēbat, inter quōs cum annīs amīcītia crēscēbat. Lȳdia nūllum alium ducem dēligēbat et Pūblius ab puellae latere rārō¹⁰ discēdēbat. Itaque sub clārō Italiae sōle Pūblius et Lȳdia, amīcī fidēlissimī, per campōs collisque cotīdiē vagābantur. Modo in silvā finitimā lūdebant ubi Pūblius sagittīs¹⁰ celeribus avis dēficiēbat et Lȳdia corōnīs variōrum flōrum comās suās ōrnābat; modo aquam et cibum portābant ad Dāvum servōsque dēfessōs quī agrōs colēbant: modo in casā parvā aut hōrās lactās in lūdō cōnsūmēbant aut auxilium dabant Lesbiae, quae cibum virō et servīs parābat vel aliās rēs domesticās agēbat.

1. The **vīlicus** was a slave who acted as overseer of a farm. He directed the farming operations and the sale of the produce.
2. **se**, reflexive pron., object of **exercent**.
3. For the construction, see [§ 501. 40](#).
4. **in**, *for*.
5. **annōs**, [§ 501. 21](#).
6. **domum**, [§ 501. 20](#).
7. **rūrī**, [§ 501. 36. 1](#).
8. **hōrās**, cf. **annōs**, line 17.
9. **quō ... spectet**, [§§ 349, 350](#).
10. **sagittīs**, [§ 501. 24](#).

Iam Pūblius¹ decem annōs habēbat cum M. Cornēlius Lentulus, pater eius, quī quīnque annōs² grave bellum in Asiā gerēbat, non sine glōriā domum³ revertēbātur. Namque multa secunda proelia fēcerat, maximās hostium cōpiās dēlēverat, multās urbīs populo⁴ Rōmānō inimicās cēperat. Primum nūntius pervēnit quī ā Lentulō⁵ missus erat⁶ ut profectiōnem suam nūntiāret. Deinde plūris diēs⁷ reditum virī optimī māter filiusque exspectābant et animīs⁸ sollicitis deōs immortalīs frūstrā colēbant. Tum dēmum hās litterās summo cum gaudiō accēperunt:

9“Mārcus Iūliae suac salūtem dīcit. Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Ex Graeciā, quō¹⁰ praeter spem et opīniōnem hodiē pervēnī, hās litterās ad tē scribō. Namque nāvis nostra frācta est; nōs autem—¹¹dīs est grātia—incolumes sumus. Ex Asiae¹² portū nāvem lēnī ventō solvimus. Postquam¹³ altum mare tenuimus ¹⁴nec iam ūllae terrae appāruērunt, caelum undique et undique fluctūs, subitō magna tempestās coorta est et nāvem vehementissimē adflīxit. Ventīs fluctibusque ²⁰⁷adflīctātī¹⁵ nec sōlem discernere nec cursum tenēre poterāmus et omnia praesentem mortem intentābant. Trīs diēs¹⁶ et trīs noctīs¹⁶ sine rēmīs vēlīsque agimur. Quārtō diē¹⁷ primum terra vīsa est et violenter in saxa, quae nōn longē ā litore aberant, dēiectī sumus. Tum vērō maiōra perīcula timēbāmus; sed nauta quīdam, vir fortissimus, ex nāve in fluctūs irātōs dēsilit ¹⁸ut fūnem ad litus portāret; quam rem summō labōre vix effēcit. Ita omnēs servātī sumus. Grātiās igitur et honōrem Neptūnō dēbēmus, quī deus nōs ē perīculō ēripuit. Nunc Athēnīs¹⁹ sum, quō cōnfūgī ut mihi paucās hōrās ad quiētem darem.²⁰ Quam primum autem aliam nāvem condūcam ut iter ad Italiam reliquum cōnficiam et domum²¹ ad meōs cārōs revertar. Salūtā nostrum Pūblium amīcissimē et valētūdinem tuam cūrā dīligenter. ²²Kalendīs Mārtiīs.”

1. *was ten years old.*

2. **annōs**, § 501. 21.

3. **domum**, § 501. 20.

4. **populō**, dat. with inimicās, cf. § 501. 16.

5. **Lentulō**, § 501. 33.

6. **ut ... nūntiāret**, § 501. 40.

7. **diēs**, cf. annōs, l. 9.

8. **animīs**, abl. of manner. Do you see one in line 15?

9. This is the usual form for the beginning of a Latin letter. First we have the greeting, and then the expression Sī valēs, etc. The date of the letter is usually given at the end, and also the place of writing, if not previously mentioned in the letter.

10. **quō**, *where*.

11. **dīs est grātia**, *thank God*, in our idiom.

12. Asia refers to the Roman province of that name in Asia Minor.

13. **altum mare tenuimus**, *we were well out to sea*.

14. **nec iam**, *and no longer*.

16. **adflīctātī**, perf. passive part. *tossed about*.

16. What construction?

17. **diē**, § 501. 35.

18. **ut ... portāret**, § 501. 40.

19. **Athēnīs**, § 501. 36. 1.

20. **darem**, cf. **portāret**, l. 6.

21. Why not **ad domum**?

22. **Kalendīs Mārtiūs**, *the Calends or first of March*; abl. of time, giving the date of the letter.

LXIV. LENTULUS REACHES HOME · PUBLIUS VISITS POMPEII WITH HIS FATHER

Post paucōs diēs nāvis M. Cornēlī Lentulī portum Mīsēnī¹ petiit, quī portus nōn longē ā Pompēiīs situs est; quō in portū classis Rōmānā pōnēbātur et ad pugnās nāvālīs ōrnābātur. Ibi nāvēs omnium generum cōnspicī poterant. Iamque incrēdibilī celeritātē nāvis longa quā Lentulus vehēbātur lītorī adpropinquāvit; nam nōn solum ventō sed etiam rēmīs impellēbātur. In altā puppe stābat gubernātor et nōn procul aliquī mīlitēs Rōmānī cum armīs splendidīs, inter quōs clārissimus erat Lentulus. Deinde servī rēmīs contendere cessāvērunt²; nautae vēlum contrāxērunt et ancorās iēcērunt. Lentulus statim ē nāvī ēgressus est et³ ad villam suam properāvit. Eum Iūlia, Pūblius, tōtaque familia excēpērunt. ⁴Quī complexūs, quanta gaudia fuērunt!

Postrīdiē eius diēi Lentulus filiō suō dīxit, “Venī, mī Pūblī, mēcum. ²⁰⁸ Pompēiōs iter hodiē faciam. Māter tua suādet⁵ ut frūctūs et cibāria emam. Namque plūrīs amīcōs ad cēnam vocāvimus et multīs rēbus⁶ egēmus. Ea hortātur ut quam primum proficiscāmur.” “Libenter, mī pater,” inquit Pūblius. “Tēcum esse mihi semper est grātum; nec Pompēiōs umquam vīdī. Sine morā proficiscī parātus sum.” Tum celeriter currum cōnscendērunt et ad urbis mūrōs vectī sunt. Stabiānā portā⁷ urbem ingressī sunt. Pūblius strātās viās mīrātur et saxa altiōra quae in mediō disposita erant et altās orbitās quās rotae inter haec saxa fēcērunt. Etiam strepitum mīrātur, multitūdinem, carrōs, fontīs, domōs, tabernās, forum⁸ cum statuīs, templīs, reliquīsque aedificiīs publicīs.

1. Misenum had an excellent harbor, and under the emperor Augustus became the chief naval station of the Roman fleet. See map of Italy.
2. Why is the infinitive used with **cessāvērunt**?
3. See Plate I, Frontispiece.
4. Observe that these words are exclamatory.
5. What construction follows **suādeō**? [§ 501. 41.](#)
6. **rēbus**, [§ 501. 32.](#)
7. This is the abl. of the *way by which* motion takes place, sometimes called the abl. of route. The construction comes under the general head of the abl. of means. For the scene here described, see Plate II, [p. 53](#), and notice especially the stepping-stones for crossing the street (**saxa quae in mediō disposita erant**).
8. The forum of Pompeii was surrounded by temples, public halls, and markets of various sorts. Locate Pompeii on the map.

LXY. A DAY AT POMPEII

Apud forum ē currū dēscendērunt et Lentulus dīxit, “Hīc sunt multa tabernārum genera, mī Pūblī. Ecce, trāns viam est popīna! ¹Hoc genus tabernārum cibāria vēndit. Frūctūs quoque ante iānuam stant. Ibi cibāria mea emam.” “Optimē,” respondit Pūblius. “At ubi, mī pater, crūstula emere possumus? Namque māter nōbīs imperāvit ²ut haec quoque parārēmus. Timeō ut³ ista popīna vēndat crūstula.” “Bene dīcis,” inquit Lentulus. “At nōnne vidēs illum fontem ā dextrā ubi aqua per leōnis caput fluit? In illō ipsō locō est taberna pīstōris quī sine dubiō vēndit crūstula.”

Brevi tempore⁴ omnia erant parata, iamque quinta hora erat. Deinde Lentulus et filius ad caupenam properaverunt, quod fame⁶ et siti⁷ urgebantur. Ibi sub arboris umbrā sederunt et puerō imperaverunt ut sibi⁸ cibum et vinum daret. Huic imperio⁹ puer celeriter paruit. Tum laeti¹⁰ ex labore refecerunt.

Post prandium perfecti sunt ut alia urbis spectacula viderent. Illō tempore fuerunt Pompeiis¹¹ multa templa, duo theatra, thermae magnumque amphitheatrum, quae omnia post paucos annos flammis atque incendiis Vesuvi et terrae motu delata sunt. Ante hanc calamitatem autem homines nihil de monte veriti sunt. In amphitheatro quidem Publius morari cupivit ut spectacula gladiatoria videret, quae in¹³ illum ipsum diem proscripserant et iam 15^{re} vera inceperant. Sed Lentulus dixit, “Morari, Publi, vereor ut possimus. Iam decima hora est et via est longa. Tempus suadet ut quam primum domum revertamur.” Itaque servo imperavit ut equos iungeret, et solis occasu¹⁶ ad villam pervenerunt.

1. We say, *this kind of shop*; Latin, *this kind of shops*.
2. **ut ... pararemus**, § 501. 41.
3. How is **ut** translated after a verb of fearing? How **ne**? Cf. § 501. 42.
4. **tempore**, § 501. 35.
5. **quinta hora**. The Romans numbered the hours of the day consecutively from sunrise to sunset, dividing the day, whether long or short, into twelve equal parts.
6. **fame** shows a slight irregularity in that the abl. ending **-e** is long.
7. **sitis**, *thirst*, has **-im** in the acc. sing., **-i** in the abl. sing., and no plural.
8. Observe that the reflexive pronoun **sibi** does not here refer to the subject of the subordinate clause in which it stands, but to the subject of the main clause. This so-called *indirect* use of the reflexive is often found in object clauses of purpose.
9. What case? Cf. § 501. 14.
10. **se**, cf. p. 205, l. 7, and [note](#).
11. **Pompeii**, § 501. 36. 1.
12. **nihil ... veriti sunt**, *had no fears of the mountain*.
13. **in**, *for*.
14. **re vera**, *in fact*.
15. **vereor ut**, § 501. 42.
16. **occasu**, § 501. 35.

[LXVI](#). LENTULUS ENGAGES A TUTOR FOR HIS SON

Ab primis annis quidem Iulia ipsa filium suum docuerat, et Publius non solum ipse et Latine loqui poterat sed etiam commodē legēbat et scribēbat. Iam Ennius² aliosque poetas legerat. Nunc vero Publius duodecim annos habebat; itaque eī pater bonum magistrum, virum omnī doctrinā et virtute ornatissimum, paravit, quī Graeca, musicam, aliasque artis doceret. Namque illis temporibus omnes ferē gentes Graecē loquebantur. Cum Publio alii pueri, Lentuli amicorum filii⁷ discēbant. Nam saepe apud Romanos mos erat non in ludum filios mittere sed domi per magistrum docere. Cotidie discipuli cum magistro in peristylo⁹ Marci domus sedebant. Omnes pueri bullam auream, originis honestae signum, in collo gerēbant, et omnes togā praetextā amicti erant, quod nondum sedecim annos¹¹ nati sunt.

1. **ipse ... poterat**, *freely, could speak Latin well*. What is the literal translation?

2. **Ennium**, the father of Latin poetry.
3. **duodecim ... habēbat**, cf. p. 206, l. 8, and [note](#).
4. **virum**, etc., *a very well-educated and worthy man*. Observe the Latin equivalent.
5. **quī ... docēret**, a relative clause of purpose. Cf. [§§ 349, 350](#).
6. In Cæsar's time Greek was spoken more widely in the Roman world than any other language.
7. **filī**, in apposition with **puerī**.
8. **nōn ... mittere**. This infinitive clause is the subject of **erat**. Cf. [§ 216](#). The same construction is repeated in the next clause, **domī ... docēre**. The object of **docēre** is **filīōs** understood.
9. The peristyle was an open court surrounded by a colonnade.
10. At the age of sixteen a boy laid aside the *bullā* and the *toga praetexta* and assumed *toga virīlis* or manly gown.
11. **annōs**, [§ 501. 21](#). The expression **nōndum sēdecim annōs nātī sunt** means literally, *they were born not yet sixteen years*. This is the usual expression for age. What is the English equivalent?

SCENE IN SCHOOL · AN EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION



TABULA ET STILUS

Discipulī. Salvē, magister.

Magister. Vōs quoque omnēs, salvēte. 1 Tabulāsne portāvistis et stilōs?

D. Portāvimus.

M. Iam fābulam Aesōpī² discēmus. Ego legam, vōs in tabulīs scrībite. Et tū, Pūblī, dā mihi ē capsā³ Aesōpī volūmen.⁴ Iam audīte omnēs: *Vulpēs et Ūva*.

Vulpēs ōlim famē coācta ūvam dēpendentem vīdit. Ad ūvam saliēbat, sūmere cōnāns. Frūstrā diū cōnāta, tandem īrāta erat et salīre cessāns dīxit: "Illa ūva est acerba; acerbam ūvam 5 nihil moror."

Omnia 'ne scrīpsistis, puerī?

D. Omnia, magister.

1. Tablets were thin boards of wood smeared with wax. The writing was done with a stylus, a pointed instrument like a pencil, made of bone or metal, with a knob at the other end. The knob was used to smooth over the wax in making erasures and corrections.
2. **Aesōpī**, the famous Greek to whom are ascribed most of the fables current in the ancient world.
3. A cylindrical box for holding books and papers, shaped like a hatbox.
4. Ancient books were written on rolls made of papy'rus.
5. **nihil moror**, *I care nothing for*.

211

LXVII. PUBLIUS GOES TO ROME TO FINISH HIS EDUCATION

Iamque Pūblius, 1quīndecim annōs nātus, 2p̄rīmīs litterārum elementīs cōnfectīs, Rōmam petere voluit ut scholās grammaticōrum et philosophōrum frequentāret. Et facillimē patrī³ suō, qui ipse philosophiae studiō tenēbātur, persuāsit. Itaque 4omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, pater filiusque equīs animōsīs vectī⁵ ad magnam urbem profectī sunt. Eōs proficīscētīs Iūlia tōtaque familia vōtīs precibusque prōsecūtae sunt. Tum per loca⁶ plāna et collis silvīs vestītōs viam ingressī sunt ad Nōlam, quod oppidum eōs hospitiō modicō excēpit. Nōlae⁷ duās hōrās morātī sunt, quod sōl merīdiānus ārdēbat. Tum rēctā viā⁸ circiter vīgintī mīlia⁹ passuum⁹ Capuam,⁹ ad īnsignem Campāniae urbem, contendērunt. Eō¹⁰ multā nocte dēfessī pervēnērunt. 11Postrīdiē eius diēi, somnō et cibō recreātī, Capuā discessērunt et 13viam Appiam ingressī, quae Capuam tangit et ūsque ad urbem Rōmam dūcit, ante merīdiem Sinuessam pervēnērunt, quod oppidum tangit mare. Inde p̄rīmā lūce proficīscētēs Formiās¹³ properāvērunt, ubi Cicerō, ōrātor clarissimus, quī forte apud vīllam suam erat, eōs benignē excēpit. Hinc 14itinere vīgintī quīnque mīlium passuum factō, Tarracīnam, oppidum in saxīs altissimīs situm, vīdērunt. Iamque nōn longē aberant palūdēs magnae, quae multa mīlia passuum undique patent. Per eās pedestris via est gravis et in nāve viātōrēs vehuntur. Itaque 15equīs relictīs Lentulus et Pūblius nāvem cōnscendērunt, et, ūnā nocte in trānsitū cōnsūptā, Forum Appī vērunt. Tum brevī tempore Arīcia eōs excēpit. Hoc oppidum, in colle 212 situm, ab urbe Romā sēdecim mīlia passuum abest. Inde dēclivis via ūsque ad latum campum dūcit ubi Rōma stat. Quem ad locum ubi Pūblius vēnit et Rōmam adhūc remōtam, maximam tōtīus orbis terrārum urbem, cōnspēxit, summā admīrātiōne et gaudiō adfectus est. Sine morā dēscendērunt, et, mediō intervāllō quam celerrimē superātō, urbem portā Capēnā ingressī sunt.

1. **quīndecim**, etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and [note](#).
2. **p̄rīmīs ... cōnfectīs**, abl. abs. Cf. [§ 501. 28](#).
3. **patrī**, dat. with **persuāsit**.
4. **omnibus ... comparātīs**, cf. note 2.
5. **vectī**, perf. pass. part. of **vehō**.
6. What is there peculiar about the gender of this word?
7. **Nōlae**, locative case, [§ 501. 36.2](#).
8. **viā**, cf. **portā**, p. 208, l. 7, and [note](#).
9. What construction?
10. **Eō**, adv. *there*.
11. **Postrīdiē eius diēi**, *on the next day*.

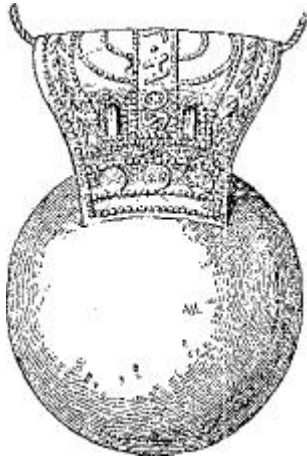
12. **viam Appiam**, the most famous of all Roman roads, the great highway from Rome to Tarentum and Brundisium, with numerous branches. Locate on the map the various towns that are mentioned in the lines that follow.

13. **Formiās**, *Formiæ*, one of the most beautiful spots on this coast, and a favorite site for the villas of rich Romans.

14. **itinere ... factō**, abl. abs. The gen. **mīlium** modifies **itinere**.

15. **equīs relictīs**. What construction? Point out a similar one in the next line.

LXVIII. PUBLIUS PUTS ON THE TOGA VIRILIS



BULLA

Pūblius iam tōtum annum Rōmae morābātur¹ multaque urbis spectācula vīderat et multōs sibi² amīcōs parāverat. Eī³ omnēs favēbant; 4dē eō omnēs bene spērāre poterant. Cotīdiē Pūblius scholas philosophōrum et grammaticōrum tantō studiō frequentābat 5ut aliīs clārum exemplum praebēret. Saepe erat cum patre in cūriā⁶; quae rēs effēcit 7ut summōs reī pūblīcae virōs et audīret et vidēret. Ubi 8sēdecim annōs natus est, bullam⁹ auream et togam praetextam mōre Rōmānō dēposuit atque virīlem togam sūmptit. Virīlis autem toga erat omnīnō alba, sed praetexta clāvum purpureum in margine habēbat. 10Dēpōnere togam praetextam et sūmere togam virīlem erat rēs grātissima puerō Rōmānō, quod postea vir et cīvis Rōmānus habēbātur.

11Hīs rēbus gestīs Lentulus ad uxōrem suam hās litterās scrīpsit:

12“Mārcus Iūliae suae salūtem dīcit. Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Accēpī tuās litterās. Hās nunc Rōmā per servum fidēlissimum mittō ut dē Pūbliō nostrō quam celerrimē sciās. Nam hodiē eī togam virīlem dedī. Ante lucem surrēxī¹³ et prīmum bullam auream dē collō eius 213 remōvī. Hāc Laribus¹⁴ cōnsecrātā et sacrīs factīs, eum togā virīlī vestīvī. Interim plūrēs amīcī cum multitudine optimōrum cīvium et honestōrum clientium pervēnerant 15quī Pūblium domō in forum dēdūcerent. Ibi in cīvitātem receptus est et nōmen, Pūblius Cornēlius Lentulus, apud cīvīs Rōmānōs ascrīptum est. Omnēs eī amīcissimī fuērunt et magna¹⁶ de eō praedīcunt. Sapientior enim aequālibus¹⁷ est et magnum ingenium habet. 18Cūrā ut valeās.”

1. **morābātur**, translate as if pluperfect.

2. **sibi**, *for himself*.

3. **Eī**, why dat.?
4. **dē ... poterant**, in English, *all regarded him as a very promising youth*; but what does the Latin say?
5. **ut ... praebēret**, § 501. 43.
6. **cūriā**, a famous building near the Roman Forum.
7. **ut ... audīret et vidēret**, § 501. 44.
8. **sēdecim**, etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and [note](#).
9. **bullam**, cf. p. 210, l. 3, and [note 4](#).
10. These infinitive clauses are the subject of **erat**. Cf. § 216.
11. **Hīs rēbus gestīs**, i.e. the assumption of the *toga virilis* and attendant ceremonies.
12. Compare the beginning of this letter with the one on page 206.
13. **surrēxī**, from **surgō**.
14. The Lares were the spirits of the ancestors, and were worshiped as household gods. All that the house contained was confided to their care, and sacrifices were made to them daily.
15. **quī ... dēdūcerent**, § 350.
16. **magna**, *great things*, a neuter adj. used as a noun.
17. **aequālibus**, § 501. 34.
18. **Cūrā ut valeās**, *take good care of your health*. How does the Latin express this idea?

[LXIX](#). PUBLIUS JOINS CÆSAR'S ARMY IN GAUL

Pūblius iam adulēscēns postquam togam virīlem sūmpsit, aliīs rēbus studēre incēpit et praesertim ūsūl armōrum sē2 dīlīgenter exercuit. Magis magisque amāvit illās artīs quae mīlitārem animum dēlectant. Iamque erant 3quī eī cursum mīlitārem praedīcerent. Nec sine causā, quod certē patris īsigne exemplum 4ita multum trahēbat. 5Paucīs ante annīs C. Iūlius Caesar, ducum Rōmānōrum maximus, cōsul creātus erat et hōc tempore in Galliā bellum grave gerēbat. Atque in exercitū eius plūrēs adulēscētēs mīlitābant, apud quōs erat amīcus quīdam Pūblī. Ille Pūblium crēbrīs litterīs vehemēter hortābātur 6ut iter in Galliam faceret. Neque Pūblius recūsāvit, et, multīs amīcīs ad portam urbis prōsequentibus, ad Caesaris castra profectus est. Quārtō diē postquam iter ingressus est, ad Alpīs, montīs altissimōs, pervēnit. Hīs summā difficultāte superātīs, tandem Gallōrum in fīnibus erat. Prīmō autem veritus est ut7 castrīs Rōmānīs adpropinquāre posset, quod Gallī, maximīs cōpiīs coāctīs, Rōmānōs obsidēbant et viās omnīs iam clauserant. Hīs rēbus commōtus Pūblius vestem Gallicam induit nē ā Gallīs caperētur, et ita per hostium cōpiās incolumis ad castra 214 pervenire potuit. Intrā mūnitiōnes acceptus, ā Caesare benignē exceptus est. Imperātor fortem adulēscēntem amplissimīs verbīs laudāvit et eum 8tribūnum mīlitum creāvit.

1. Abl. of means.
2. **sē**, reflexive object of **exercuit**.
3. **quī ... praedīcerent**, § 501. 45.
4. **ita multum trahēbat**, *had a great influence in that direction*.
5. **Paucīs ante annīs**, *a few years before*; in Latin, *before by a few years*, **ante** being an adverb and **annīs** abl. of degree of difference.
6. **ut ... faceret**, § 501. 41.
7. **ut**, how translated here? See § 501. 42.
8. The *military tribune* was a commissioned officer nearly corresponding to our rank of colonel. The tribunes were often inexperienced men, so Cæsar did not allow them much responsibility.



IMPEDIMENTA

HOW THE ROMANS MARCHED AND CAMPED

Exercitus quī in hostium finibus bellum genit multīs perīcuīs circumdatus est. 1 Quae perīcula ut vītāret, Rōmāni summam cūram adhībēre solēbant. Adpropinquanteēs cōpiīs hostium agmen ita dispōnēbant 2 ut imperātor ipse cum plāribus legiōnibus expeditīs 3 prīmum agmen dūceret. Post eās cōpiās impedimenta 4 tōtū exercitū 5 conlocābant. 6 Tum legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant. Equitēs quoque in omnīs partīs dīmīttēbantur quī loca explōrārent; et centuriōnēs praemittēbantur ut locum castrīs idōneum dēligerent. Locus habēbatur idōneus castrīs 6 quī facile dēfendī posset et prope aquam esset. Quā dē causā castra 7 in colle ab utrāque parte arduō, ā fronte lēniter dēclīvī saepe pōnēbantur; vel locus palūdibus cīnctus vel in flūminis rīpīs situs dēligēbātur. Ad locum postquam exercitus pervēnit, aliī mīlitum 8 in armīs erant, aliī castra mūnīre incipiēbant. Nam 9 quō tūtiōrēs ab hostibus mīlitēs essent, nēve incautī et imparātī opprimerentur, castra fossā lātā et vāllō altō mūniēbant. In castrīs portae quattuor erant ut ēruptiō mīlitum omnīs in partīs fierī posset. In angulīs castrōrum erant turrēs dē quibus tēla in hostīs coniciēbantur. 10 Tālibus in castrīs quālia dēscrīpsimus Pūblius ā Caesare exceptus est.

1. **Quae perīcula**, object of **vītārent**. It is placed first to make a proper connection with the preceding sentence.
2. **ut ... dūceret**, § 501. 43.
3. **expeditīs**, i.e. without baggage and ready for action.
4. **impedimenta**. Much of the baggage was carried in carts and on beasts of burden, as is shown above; but, besides this, each soldier (unless **expeditus**) carried a heavy pack. See also picture, [p. 159](#).
5. The newest legions were placed in the rear, because they were the least reliable.
6. **quī ... posset ... esset**, § 501. 45.
7. **castra**, subject of **pōnēbantur**.
8. **in armīs erant**, *stood under arms*.
9. **quō ... essent**. When is **quō** used to introduce a purpose clause? See § 350. I.

10. **Tālibus in castrīs quālia**, *in such a camp as*. It is important to remember the correlatives **tālis ... quālis**, *such ... as*.

LXX. THE RIVAL CENTURIONS



CENTURIO

Illīs in castrīs erant duo centuriōnēs,¹ fortissimī virī, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus, quōrum neuter alterī virtūte² cēdere volēbat. Inter eōs iam multōs annōs infēnsus certāmen gerēbātur. Tum dēnum finis contrōversiae hōc modō³ factus est. Diē tertiō postquam Pūblius pervēnit, hostēs, maiōribus cōpiīs coāctīs, ācerrimum impetum in castra fēcērunt. Tum Pullō, ⁴cum Rōmānī tardiōrēs⁵ vidērentur, “Cūr dubitās,” inquit, “Vorēne? Quam commodiōrem occāsiōnem expectās? Hic diēs dē virtūte nostrā iūdicābit.” Haec⁶ cum dīxisset, ⁷extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcessit et in eam hostium partem quae cōfertissima ⁸vidēbātur inrūpit. Neque Vorēnus quidem tum vāllō⁸ sēsē continet, sed Pullōnem subsequitur. Tum Pullō pīlum in hostīs immittit atque ūnum ex multitudīne prōcurrentem trāicit. Hunc percussus et exanimātus hostēs scūtīs prōtegent et in Pullōnem omnēs tēla coniciunt. Eius scūtum trānsfigitur et tēlum in balteō dēfigitur. Hic cāsus vāgīnam āvertit et dextram manum eius gladium ēdūcere cōnantis⁹ morātur. Eum ita impeditum hostēs circumsistunt.

Tum vēro ¹⁰eī labōrantī Vorēnus, cum sit inimīcus, tamen auxilium dat. Ad hunc cōnfestim ¹¹ā Pullōne omnis multitudō sē convertit. Gladiō comminus pugnat Vorēnus, atque, ūnō interfectō, reliquōs paulum prōpellit. Sed instāns cupidius¹² infēlīx, ¹³pede sē fallente, concidit.

Huic rūsus circumventō auxilium dat Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, plūribus interfectīs, summā cum laude intrā mūnitiōnēs sē recipiunt. Sic inimīcōrum alter alterī auxilium dedit nec de eōrum virtūte quisquam iūdicāre potuit.

1. A centurion commanded a company of about sixty men. He was a common soldier who had been promoted from the ranks for his courage and fighting qualities. The centurions were the real

leaders of the men in battle. There were sixty of them in a legion. The centurion in the picture (p. 216) has in his hand a staff with a crook at one end, the symbol of his authority.

2. **virtūte**, § 501. 30.

3. Abl. of manner.

4. **cum ... vidērentur**, § 501. 46.

5. **tardiōrēs**, *too slow*, a not infrequent translation of the comparative degree.

6. **Haec**, obj. of **dīxisset**. It is placed before **cum** to make a close connection with the preceding sentence. What is the construction of **dīxisset**?

7. **vidēbatur**, **inrūpit**. Why is the imperfect used in one case and the perfect in the other? Cf. § 190.

8. **vāllō**, abl. of means, but in English we should say *within the rampart*. Cf. **ingentī stabulō**, p. 201, l. 13, and note.

9. **cōnantis**, pres. part. agreeing with **eius**.

10. **eī labōrantī**, indir. obj. of dat.

11. **ā Pullōne**, *from Pullo*, abl. of separation.

12. **cupidius**, *too eagerly*.

13. **pede sē fallente**, lit. *the foot deceiving itself*; in our idiom, *his foot slipping*.

LXXI. THE ENEMY BESIEGING THE CAMP ARE REPULSED

Cum iam sex hōrās pugnatum esset¹ ac nōn solum vīrēs sed etiam tēla Rōmānōs dēficerent¹, atque hostēs ācrius instārent,¹ et vāllum scindere fossamque complēre incēpissent,¹ Caesar, vir reī mīlitāris perītissimus, 217 suīs imperāvit ut proelium paulisper intermitterent,² et, signō datō, ex castrīs ērumperent.² 3Quod iussī sunt faciunt, et subitō ex omnibus portīs ērumpunt. Atque tam celeriter mīlitēs concurrerunt et tam propinquī erant hostēs⁴ ut spatium pīla coniciendī⁵ nōn darētur. Itaque reiectīs pīlīs 6comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. Diū et audācter hostēs restitērunt et in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut ā dextrō cornū vehementer 7multitūdine suōrum aciem Rōmanam premerent. 8Id imperātor cum animadvertisset, Pūblium adulēscēntem cum equitātū mīsīt quī labōrantibus⁹ auxiliū daret. Eius impetum sustinēre nōn potuerunt hostēs¹⁰ et omnēs terga vertērunt. Eōs in fugam datōs Pūblius subsecūtus est usque ad flūmen Rhēnum, quod ab eō locō quīnque mīlia passuum aberat. Ibi paucī salūtem sibi reppererunt. Omnibus reliquīs interfectīs, Pūblius et equitēs in castra sēsē recēperunt. Dē hāc calamitāte finitimae gentēs cum certiōrēs factae essent, ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt et sē suaque omnia dēdidērunt.

1. **pugnātum esset**, **dēficerent**, **instārent**, **incēpissent**. These are all subjunctives with **cum**. Cf. § 501. 46.

2. **intermitterent**, **ērumperent**. What use of the subjunctive?

3. **Quod**, etc., *they do as ordered*. The antecedent of **quod** is **id** understood, which would be the object of **faciunt**.

4. **ut ... darētur**. Is this a clause of purpose or of result?

5. **coniciendī**, § 402.

6. **comminus gladiīs pugnātum est**, *a hand-to-hand conflict was waged with swords*.

7. **multitūdine suōrum**, *by their numbers*. **suōrum** is used as a noun. What is the literal translation of this expression?

8. **Id imperātor**. **Id** is the obj. and **imperātor** the subj. of **animadvertisset**.

9. **labōrantibus**. This participle agrees with **iīs** understood, the indir. obj. of **daret; qui ... daret** is a purpose clause, § 501. 40.

10. **hostēs**, subj. of **potuērunt**.

LXXII. PUBLIUS GOES TO GERMANY · ITS GREAT FORESTS AND STRANGE ANIMALS

Initā aestāte Caesar litterīs certior fīēbat et per explōrātōrēs cognōscēbat plūrīs cīvitātēs Galliae novīs rēbus studēre,¹ et contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre¹ obsidēsque² inter sē dare,¹ atque cum hīs Germānōs quōsdam quoque sēsē coniūctūrōs esse.¹ Hīs litterīs nūntiisque commōtus Caesar cōstituit quam celerrimē in Gallōs proficīscī,³ ut eōs inopīnantīs opprimeret, et Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus peditum et duōbus mīlibus equitum in Germānōs mittere.³ 2 18 4 Itaque rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra mōvit. Ab utrōque⁵ rēs bene gesta est; nam Caesar tam celeriter in hostium fīnīs pervēnit ut spatium cōpiās cōgendī nōn darētur⁷; et Labiēnus dē Germānīs tam grave supplicium sūmpsit ut nēmō ex eā gente in reliquum tempus Gallīs auxilium dare audēret.⁷

Hoc iter in Germāniam Pūblius quoque fēcit et, ⁸cum ibi morārētur, multa mīrabilia vīdit. Praesertim vērō ingentem silvam mīrābātur, quae tantae magnitudinis esse dīcēbātur ⁹ut nēmō eam trānsire posset, nec quisquam scīret aut initium aut finem. Quā dē rē plūra cognōverat ā mīlite quōdam quī ōlim captus ā Germānīs multōs annōs ibi incoluit. Ille¹⁰ dē silvā dīcēns, “Infinītae magnitudinis est haec silva,” inquit; “nec quisquam est ¹¹huius Germāniae ¹²quī initium eius sciat aut ad finem adierit. Nāscuntur illīc multa tālia animālium genera quālia reliquīs in locīs nōn inveniuntur. Sunt bovēs quī ūnum¹³ cornū habent; sunt etiam animālia quae appellantur alcēs. Hae nūllōs crūrum¹⁴ articulōs habent. Itaque, sī forte concidērunt, sēsē ērigere nūllō modō possunt. Arborēs habent prō¹⁵ cubīlibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt paulō minōrēs elephantīs.¹⁶ Magna vis eōrum est et magna vėlōcītās. Neque hominī neque ferae parcut.¹⁷”

1. Observe that all these infinitives are in indirect statements after **certior fīēbat**, *he was informed*, and **cognōscēbat**, *he learned*. Cf. § 501.48, 49.

2. **inter sē**, *to each other*.

3. **proficīscī**, **mittere**. These infinitives depend upon **cōstituit**.

4. Before beginning a campaign, food had to be provided. Every fifteen days grain was distributed. Each soldier received about two pecks. This he carried in his pack, and this constituted his food, varied occasionally by what he could find by foraging.

5. Abl. of personal agent, § 501. 33.

6. **cōpiās cōgendī**, § 501. 37. 1.

7. **darētur**, **audēret**, § 501. 43. **audēret** is not from **audiō**.

8. **cum ... morārētur**, § 501. 46.

9. **ut ... posset**, **... scīret**, § 501. 43.

10. **Ille**, subj. of **inquit**.

11. **huius Germāniae**, *of this part of Germany*.

12. **quī ... scīat ... adierit**, § 501. 45.

13. **ūnum**, *only one*.

14. **crūrum**, from **crūs**.

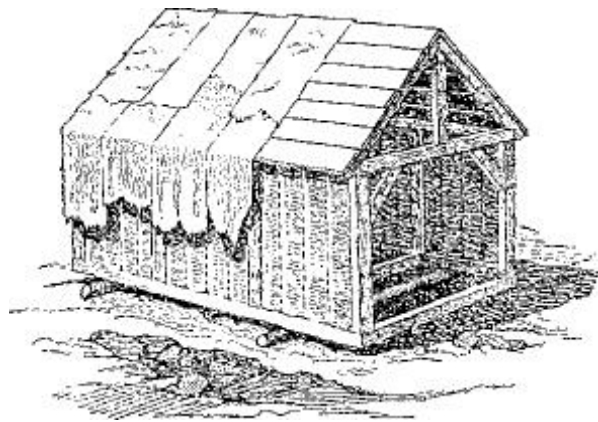
15. **prō**, *for, in place of*.

16. **elephantīs**, § 501. 34.

17. **parcunt**. What case is used with this verb?

LXXIII. THE STORMING OF A CITY

Pūblius plūrīs diēs in Germāniā morātus¹ in Galliam rediit, et ad Caesaris castra sē contulit. Ille quia molestē ferēbat Gallōs² eius regiōnis obsidēs dare recūsāvisse et exercituī frūmentum praebēre 219 nōluisse, cōstituit eīs³ bellum īferre. Agrīs vāstātīs, vīcīs incēnsīs, pervēnit ad oppidum validissimum quod et nātūrā et arte mūnitum erat. Cingēbātur mūrō vīgintī quīnque pedēs⁴ altō. Ā lateribus duōsitum, praeruptō fastīgīō ad plānitiem vergēgat; ā quārtō tantum⁵ latere aditus erat facilis. Hoc oppidum oppugnāre, cū opus esset difficillimum, tamen cōstituit Caesar. Et castrīs mūnitīs Pūbliō negōtium dedit ut rēs ⁷ad oppugnandum necessariās parāret.



VINEA

Rōmānōrum autem oppugnātiō est haec.⁸ Prīmum turrēs aedificantur quibus mīlitēs in summum mūrū ēvādere possint⁹; vīnae¹⁰ fiunt quibus tēctī mīlitēs ad mūrū succēdant; pluteī¹¹ parantur post quōs mīlitēs tormenta¹² administrent; sunt quoque arietēs quī mūrū et portās discutiant. Hīs omnibus rēbus comparātīs, deinde ¹³agger ab eā parte ubi aditus est facillimus exstruitur et cum 220 vīneīs ad ipsum oppidum agitur. Tum turreis in aggere prōmovētur; arietibus quī sub vīneīs conlocātī erant mūrus et portae discutuntur; ballistīs, catapultīs, reliquīsque tormentīs lapidēs et tēla in oppidum coniciuntur. Postrēmō cum iam turreis et agger altitudinem mūrī adaequant et arietēs moenia perfrēgērunt,¹⁴ signō datō mīlitēs inruunt et oppidum expugnant.

1. **morātus**. Is this part. active or passive in meaning?
2. **Gallōs**, subj. acc. of the infins. **recūsāvisse** and **nōluisse**. The indirect statement depends upon **molestē ferēbat**.
3. **eīs**, § 501. 15.
4. **pedēs**, § 501. 21.
5. **tantum**, adv. *only*.
6. **cum ... esset**, a clause of concession, § 501. 46.
7. **ad oppugnandum**, a gerund expressing purpose.
8. **haec**, *as follows*.
9. **possint**, subjv. of purpose. Three similar constructions follow.

10. **vīneae**. These **vīneae** were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were working to take a fortification. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers.

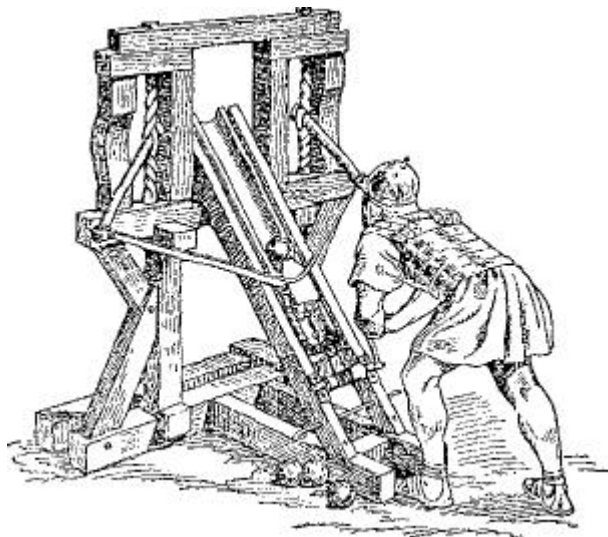
11. **pluteī**, large screens or shields with small wheels attached to them. These were used to protect besiegers while moving up to a city or while serving the engines of war.

12. **tormenta**. The engines of war were chiefly the catapult for shooting great arrows, and the ballista, for hurling large stones. They had a range of about two thousand feet and were very effective.

13. The **agger**, or mound, was of chief importance in a siege. It was begun just out of reach of the missiles of the enemy, and then gradually extended towards the point to be attacked. At the same time its height gradually increased until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. It was made of earth and timber, and had covered galleries running through it for the use of the besiegers. Over or beside the *agger* a tower was moved up to the wall, often with a battering-ram (*aries*) in the lowest story. (See picture, [p. 221.](#))

14. **perfrēgerunt**, from **perfringō**.

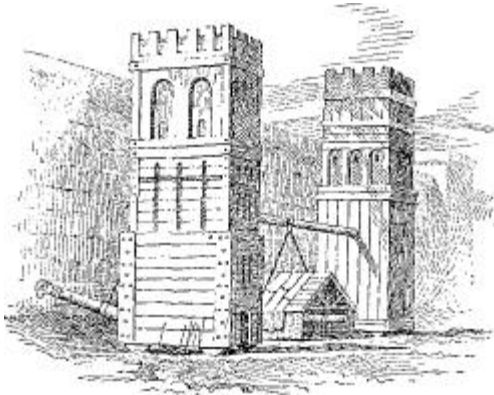
[LXXIV.](#) THE CITY IS TAKEN · THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED



BALLISTA

Omnibus rēbus necessariīs ad oppugnandum ā Pūbliō comparātīs, dēliberātur in conciliō quod cōnsilium 1 oppidī expugnandī ineant. 2 Tum ūnus 3 ex centuriōnibus, vir reī mīlitāris perītissimus, “Ego suādeō,” inquit, “ut ab eā parte, ubi aditus sit 4 facillimus, aggerem exstruāmus 5 et turrim prōmoveāmus 5 atque ariete admōtō simul mūrū discutere cōnemur. 5” 6 Hoc cōnsilium cum omnibus placēret, Caesar concilium dīmīsit. Deinde mīlitēs hortātus ut priōrēs victōriās memoriā 7 tenērent, iussit aggerem exstruī, turrim et arietem admovērī. Neque oppidānīs 8 cōnsilium dēfuit. Aliī ignem et omne genus tēlorum dē mūrō in turrim coniēcērunt, aliī ingentia saxa in vīneās et arietem dēvolvērunt. Diū utrimque ācerrimē 221 pugnātum est. Nē vulnerātī quidem pedem rettulērunt. Tandem, 9 dē tertiā vigiliā, Pūblius, quem Caesar illī operī 10 praefecerat, nūntiāvit partem 11 mūrī ictibus arietis labefactam concidisse. Quā rē audītā Caesar signum dat; mīlitēs inruunt et magnā cum caede hostium oppidum capiunt.

1. **oppidī expugnandī**. Is this a gerund or a gerundive construction? Cf. [§ 501. 37](#).
2. **ineant**. [§ 501. 50](#).
3. **ūnus**. subj. of **inquit**.
4. **sit**. This is a so-called subjunctive by attraction, which means that the clause beginning with **ubi** stands in such close connection with the subjv. clause beginning with **ut**, that its verb is attracted into the same mood.
5. All these verbs are in the same construction.
6. **Hoc cōsilium**, subj. of **placēret**. For the order cf. **Haec cum**, etc., p. 215, l. 22, and note; **Id imperātor cum**, p. 217, l. 8.
7. **memoriā**, abl. of means.
8. **oppidānīs**, [§ 501. 15](#).
9. Between twelve and three o'clock in the morning. The night was divided into four watches.
10. **operī**, [§ 501. 15](#).
11. **partem**, subj. acc. of **concidisse**.



TURRES, ARIETES, VINEA

Postrīdiē eius diēi, hōc oppidō expugnātō, 12captīvōrum quī nōbilissimī sunt ad imperātōrem ante praetōrium¹³ addūcuntur. Ipse, lōricā aurātā et paludāmentō purpureō īsignis, captīvōs per interpretem in hunc modum interrogat: 14 Vōs quī estis¹⁵?

Interpres. Rogat imperātor quī sītis.

Captīvī. Fīliī rēgis sumus.

Interpres. Dīcunt sē filiōs esse rēgis.

Imperātor. Cūr mihi tantās iniūriās intulistis?

Interpres. Rogat cūr sibi tantās iniūriās intuleritis.

Captīvī. Iniūriās eī nōn intulimus sed prō patriā bellum gessimus. Semper voluimus Rōmānīs esse amīcī, sed Rōmānī sine causā nōs domō patriāque expellere cōnātī sunt.

Interpres. 16Negant sē iniūriās tibi intulisse, sed prō patriā bellum gessisse. 17Semper sē voluisse amīcōs Rōmānīs esse, sed Rōmānōs sine causā sē domō patriāque expellere cōnātōs esse.

222 Imperātor. 18Manēbitisne in reliquum tempus in fidē, hāc rebelliōne condōnātā?

Tum vērō captīvī multīs cum lacrimīs iūrāvērunt sē in fidē mānsūrōs esse, et Caesar eōs incolumīs domum dīmīsīt.

12. **captīvōrum ... sunt**, *the noblest of the captives*.

13. The general's headquarters.

14. Study carefully these direct questions, indirect questions, and indirect statements.

15. See Plate III, [p. 148](#).

16. **Negant**, etc., *they say that they have not*, etc. **Negant** is equivalent to **dīcunt nōn**, and the negative modifies **intulisse**, but not the remainder of the indirect statement.

17. **Semper**, etc., *that they have always*, etc.

18. **Manēbitisne in fidē**, *will you remain loyal?*

LXXV. CIVIL WAR BREAKS OUT BETWEEN CAESAR AND POMPEY · THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA

Nē cōnfectō¹ quidem bellō Gallicō, ²bellum cīvīle inter Caesarem et Pompēium exortum est. Nam Pompēius, quī summum imperium petēbat, senātuī persuāserat ut Caesarem reī publicae hostem³ iūdicāret et exercitum eius dīmīttī iubēret. Quibus cognitīs rēbus Caesar exercitum suum dīmītere recūsāvit, atque, hortātus mīlitēs ut ducem totiēns victōrem ab inimicōrum iniūriīs dēfenderent, imperāvit ut sē Rōmam sequerentur. Summā cum alacritāte mīlitēs pārūrunt, et trānsitō Rubicōne⁴ initium bellī cīvīlis factum est.

Italiae urbēs quidem omnēs ferē ⁵rēbus Caesaris favēbant et eum benignē excēpērunt. Quā rē commōtus Pompēius ante Caesaris adventum Rōmā excessit et Brundisium⁶ pervēnit, inde ⁷paucīs post diēbus cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Ēpīrum mare trānsiit. Eum Caesar cum septem legiōnibus et quīngentīs equitibus secūtus est, et īnsgnis inter Caesaris comitātum erat Pūblius.

Plūribus leviōribus proeliīs factīs, tandem cōpiae adversae ad Pharsālum⁸ in Thessaliā sitam castra posuērunt. Cum Pompeī exercitus ²²³esset bis tantus quantus Caesaris, tamen erant multī quī veterānās legiōnēs quae Gallōs et Germānōs superāverant vehementer timēbant. Quōs⁹ ¹⁰ante proelium commissum Labiēnus¹¹ lēgātus, quī ab Caesare nūper dēfēcerat, ita adlocūtus est: “¹²Nōlīte exīstimāre hunc esse exercitum veterānōrum mīlitum. Omnibus interfūī proeliīs¹³ neque temerē incognitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua pars illius exercitūs quī Gallōs superāvit adhūc superest. Magna pars occīsa est, multī domum discessērunt, multī sunt relictī in Italiā. Hae cōpiae quās vidētis in ¹⁴citeriōre Galliā nūper cōnscrīptae sunt.” Haec¹⁵ cum dīxisset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum esse. ¹⁶Hoc idem Pompēius et omnēs reliquī iūrāvērunt, et magnā spē et laetitiā, sicut certam ad victōriam, cōpiae ē castrīs exiērunt.

Item Caesar, animō¹⁷ ad dīmīcandum parātus, exercitum suum ēdūxit et septem cohortibus ¹⁸praesidiō castrīs relictīs cōpiās triplicī aciē īnstrūxit. Tum, mīlitibus studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā signum dedit. Mīlitēs prōcurrērunt et pīlīs missīs gladiōs strīnxērunt. Neque vērō virtūs hostibus dēfuit. Nam et tēla missa sustinuērunt et impetum gladiōrum excēpērunt et ōrdinēs cōnservāvērunt. Utrimque diū et ācritē pugnātum est nec quisquam pedem rettulit. Tum equitēs Pompēī aciem Caesaris circumīre cōnātī sunt. Quod¹⁹ ubi Caesar animadvertit, tertiam aciem,²⁰ quae ad id tempus quiēta fuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Tum vērō integrōrum impetum²¹ dēfessī

hostēs sustinēre nōn potuērunt et omnēs terga vertērunt. Sed Pompēius dē fortūnīs suīs dēspērāns sē in castra equō contulit, inde mox cum paucīs equitibus effūgit.

1. With **nē ... quidem** the emphatic word stands between the two.
2. The Civil War was caused by the jealousy and rivalry between Cæsar and Pompey. It resulted in the defeat and subsequent death of Pompey and the elevation of Cæsar to the lordship of the Roman world.
3. **hostem**, predicate accusative, [§ 501. 22](#).
4. The Rubicon was a small stream in northern Italy that marked the boundary of Cæsar's province. By crossing it with an armed force Cæsar declared war upon Pompey and the existing government. Cæsar crossed the Rubicon early in the year 49 B.C.
5. **rēbus Caesaris favēbant**, *favored Cæsar's side*. In what case is **rēbus**?
6. **Brundisium**, a famous port in southern Italy whence ships sailed for Greece and the East. See map.
7. **paucīs post diēbus**, *a few days later*; literally, *afterguards by a few days*. Cf. **paucīs ante annīs**, p. 213, l. 12, and note.
7. The battle of Pharsalia was fought on August 9, 48 B.C. In importance it ranks as one of the great battles of the world.
8. **Quōs**, obj. of **adlocūtus est**.
10. **ante proelium commissum**, *before the beginning of the battle*.
11. **Labiēnus**, Cæsar's most faithful and skillful lieutenant in the Gallic War. On the outbreak of the Civil War, in 49 B.C., he deserted Cæsar and joined Pompey. His defection caused the greatest joy among the Pompeian party; but he disappointed the expectations of his new friends, and never accomplished anything of importance. He fought against his old commander in several battles and was slain at the battle of Munda in Spain, 45 B.C.
12. **Nōlīte exīstimāre**, *don't think*.
13. **proeliūs**, [§ 501. 15](#).
14. **citeriōre Galliā**. This name is applied to Cisalpine Gaul, or Gaul south of the Alps.
15. **Haec**, obj. of **dīxisset**.
16. **Hoc idem**, obj. of **iūrāvērunt**.
17. **animō**, [§ 501. 30](#).
18. **praesidiō castrīs**, [§ 501. 17](#).
19. **Quod**, obj. of **animadvertit**.
20. **aciem**, subj. of **prōcurrere**.
21. **impetum**, obj. of **sustinēre**.



SIGNIFER

Pompēiō amīcīsque eius superātīs atque omnibus hostibus ubīque victīs, Caesar imperātor Rōmam rediit et 1extrā moenia urbis in campō Mārtiō castra posuit. Tum vērō amplissimīs honōribus adfectus est. Dictātor creātus est, et eī triumphus ā senātū est dēcrētus. 2Quō diē de Gallīs triumphum ēgit, tanta multitudō hominum in urbem undique cōnflūxit 3ut omnia loca essent cōnferta. Temp̄la patēbant, ārae fūmābant, columnae sertīs ōrnātae erant. 4Cum vērō pompa urbem intrāret, quantus hominum fremitus ortus est! Prīmum per portam ingressī sunt senātus et magistrātūs. Secūtī sunt tībīcinēs, signiferī, peditēs laureā corōnātī canentēs: “Ecce Caesar nunc triumphat, quī subēgit Galliam,” et “Mīlle, mīlle, mīlle, mīlle Gallōs trucidāvimus.” Multī praedam captārum urbium portābant, arma, omnia bellī īnstrūmenta. Secūtī sunt equitēs, animōsīs atque splendidissimē ōrnātīs equīs vectī, inter quōs Pūblius adulēscēns fortissimus habēbātur. Addūcēbantur taurī, arietēs, 5quī dīs immortalibus immolārentur. Ita longō agmine prōgrediēns exercitus 6sacrā viā per forum in Capitōlium perrēxit.



LICTORES CUM FASCIBUS

Imperātor ipse cum urbem intrāret, undique laetō clāmōre multitudinis salūtātus est. Stābat in currū aureō quem quattuor albī equī vehēbant. Indūtus 7 togā pictā, alterā manū habēnās et lauream 225 tenēbat, alterā eburneum scēptrum. Post eum servus in currū stāns auream corōnam super caput eius tenēbat. Ante currum miserimī captīvī, rēgēs prīncipēsque superātārum gentium, catēnīs vīnctī, prōgrediēbantur; et vīgintī quattuor lictōrēs⁸ laureatās fascīs ferentēs et signiferī currum Caesaris comitābantur. Conclūdit agmen multitudō captīvōrum, quī, in servitūtem redactī,⁹ dēmissō vultū, vīnctīs¹⁰ bracchiīs, sequuntur; quibuscum veniunt longissimō ordine mīlitēs, etiam hī praedam vel insignia mīlitāria ferentēs.

Caesar cum Capitōlium ascendisset, in templō Iovī Capitōlinō sacra fēcit. Simul¹¹ captivōrum quī nōbilissimī erant, abductī in carcerem,¹² interfectī sunt. Sacrīs factīs Caesar dē Capitōliō dēscendit et in forō mīitibus suīs honōrēs mīlitārīs dedit eīsque pecūniam ex bellī praedā distribuit.

Hīs omnibus rēbus cōnfectīs, Pūblius Caesarem valēre¹³ iussit et quam celerrimē ad vīllam contendit ut patrem mātremque salūtāret.

¹⁵Dē rēbus gestīs P. Cornēli Lēntulī hāctenus.

1. A victorious general with his army was not allowed to enter the city until the day of his triumph. A triumph was the greatest of all military honors.

2. **Quō diē**, *on the day that*, abl. of time.

3. **ut ... essent**, § 501. 43.
 4. **Cum ... intrāret**, § 501. 46.
 5. **quī ... immolārentur**, § 501. 40.
 6. The Sacred Way was a noted street running along one side of the Forum to the base of the Capitoline Hill, on whose summit stood the magnificent temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. This route was always followed by triumphal processions.
 7. The **toga picta** worn by a general in his triumph was a splendid robe of Tyrian purple covered with golden stars. See Plate IV, p. 213.
 8. The lictors were a guard of honor that attended the higher magistrates and made a way for them through the streets. On their shoulders they carried the *fascēs*, a bundle of rods with an ax in the middle, symbolizing the power of the law.
 9. **dēmissō vultū**, *with downcast countenance*.
 10. **vīctīs**, from **vīciō**.
 12. **Simul**, etc., *At the same time those of the captives who were the noblest*.
 12. The prison was a gloomy dungeon on the lower slopes of the Capitoline Hill.
 13. **valēre iussit**, *bade farewell to*.
 14. This sentence marks the end of the story.
- 226

APPENDIX I

DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC.

NOUNS

460. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

First Declension—**Ā**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ae**

Second Declension—**O**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ī**

Third Declension—Consonant stems and **I**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-is**

Fourth Declension—**U**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ūs**

Fifth Declension—**Ē**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ĕī**

461. FIRST DECLENSION. **Ā**-STEMS

domina, lady Stem dominā- Base domin-			
Singular		Plural	
TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS	
<i>Nom.</i> domina	-a	dominae	-ae
<i>Gen.</i> dominae	-ae	dominārum	-ārum

<i>Dat.</i> dominae	-ae	dominīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i> dominam	-am	dominās	-ās
<i>Abl.</i> dominā	-ā	dominīs	-īs

a. **Dea** and **filia** have the termination **-ābus** in the dative and ablative plural.

227 462. SECOND DECLENSION. O-STEMS

a. Masculines in **-us**

dominus, master		Stem domino-	Base domin-
	Singular		Plural
	TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	dominus -us	dominī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	dominī -ī	dominōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	dominō -ō	dominīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	dominum -um	dominōs	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	dominō -ō	dominīs	-īs

1. Nouns in **-us** of the second declension have the termination **-e'** in the vocative singular, as **domine**.

2. Proper names in **-ius**, and **filius**, end in **-ī** in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as **Vergi'ī**, **filī**.

b. Neuters in **-um**

pīlum, spear		Stem pīlo-	Base pīl-
	Singular		Plural
	TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	pīlum -um	pīla	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	pīlī -ī	pīlōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pīlō -ō	pīlīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	pīlum -um	pīla	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	pīlō -ō	pīlīs	-īs

1. Masculines in **-ius** and neuters in **-ium** end in **-ī** in the genitive singular, *not* in **-iī**, and the accent rests on the penult.

c. Masculines in **-er** AND **-ir**

puer, boy ager, field vir, man

Stems	puero-	agro-	viro-	
Bases	puer-	agr-	vir-	
		Singular		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	ager	vir	—
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrū	virum	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
228		Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

463. THIRD DECLENSION.

- I. Consonant
CLASSIFICATION Stems
1. Stems that add **-s** to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only.
 2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular:
 - a. masculines and feminines; b. neuters.
- II. *I*-Stems. Masculines, feminines, and neuters.

464. I. CONSONANT STEMS

1. Nouns that add **-s** to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only

prīnceps, m., *chief* **mīles**, m., *soldier* **lapis**, m., *stone*

Bases or Stems	prīncip-	milit-	lapid-	
		Singular		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	prīnceps	mīles	lapis	-s
<i>Gen.</i>	prīn'cipis	mīlitis	lapidis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	prīn'cipī	mīlitī	lapidī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	prīn'cipem	mīlitem	lapidem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	prīn'cipe	mīlite	lapide	-e
		Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	prīn'cipēs	mīlitēs	lapidēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	prīn'cipum	mīlitum	lapidum	-um

<i>Dat.</i>	prīnci' pibus	mīlit ibus	lapid ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	prīn'cipēs	mīlitēs	lapidēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	prīnci' pibus	mīlit ibus	lapid ibus	-ibus

rēx, m., *king* **iūdex**, m., *judge* **virtūs**, f., *manliness*

Bases or Stems	rēg-	iūdic-	virtūt-	
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	iūdex	virtūs	-s
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	iūdicis	virtū'tis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	iūdicī	virtū'tī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	iūdicem	virtū'tem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	iūdice	virtū'te	-e

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	iūdicēs	virtū'tēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	iūdicum	virtū'tum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	iūdicibus	virtū'tibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	iūdicēs	virtū'tēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	iūdicibus	virtū'tibus	-ibus

Note. For consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. [§ 233.3](#).

2. Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular

a. Masculines and Feminines

cōnsul, m., *consul* **legiō**, f., *legion* **ōrdō**, m., *row* **pater**, m., *father*

Bases or Stems	cōnsul-	legiōn-	ōrdin-	patr-	
					Singular
					TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul	legiō	ōrdō	pater	—
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulis	legiōnis	ōrdinis	patris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsulī	legiōnī	ōrdinī	patrī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulem	legiōnem	ōrdinem	patrem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsule	legiōne	ōrdine	patre	-e
					Plural
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	ōrdinēs	patrēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulum	legiōnum	ōrdinum	patrum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	ōrdinibus	patribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	ōrdinēs	patrēs	-ēs

Abl. cōsulibus legiōnibus ōrdinibus patribus -ibus

Note. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. [§ 236. 1-3.](#)

230 *b.* Neuters

flūmen, n., *river* **tempus**, n., *time* **opus**, n., *work* **caput**, n., *head*

Bases or Stems	flūmin-	tempor-	oper-	capit-	
					Singular
					TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	flūmen	tempus	opus	caput	—
<i>Gen.</i>	flūminis	temporis	operis	capitis -is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	flūminī	temperī	operī	capitī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmen	tempus	opus	caput	—
<i>Abl.</i>	flūmine	tempore	opere	capite	-e
					Plural
<i>Nom.</i>	flūmina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	flūminum	temporum	operum	capitum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	flūminibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	flūminibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus

Note. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. [§ 238. 2, 3.](#)

465. II. *I*-STEMS

a. Masculines and Feminines

	caedēs , f., <i>slaughter</i>	hostis , m., <i>enemy</i>	urbs , f., <i>city</i>	cliēns , m., <i>retainer</i>	
Stems	caedi-	hosti-	urbi-	clienti-	
Bases	caed-	host-	urb-	client-	
					Singular
					TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	hostis	urbs	cliēns	-s, -is, or -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	caedis	hostis	urbis	clientis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	caedī	hostī	urbī	clientī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	caedem	hostem	urbem	clientem	-em (-im)
<i>Abl.</i>	caede	hoste	urbe	cliente	-e (-ī)
					Plural
<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	hostēs	urbēs	clientēs	-ēs

<i>Gen.</i>	caedium	hostium	urbium	clientium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	caedīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	clientīs, -ēs	-īs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus

1. **Avis, cīvis, fīnis, ignis, nāvis**, have the abl. sing. in **-ī** or **-e**.

2. **Turris** has accusative **turrim** and ablative **turrī** or **turre**.

231 *b.* Neuters

	īnsigne , n., <i>decoration</i>	animāl , n., <i>animal</i>	calcār , n., <i>spur</i>	
Stems	īnsigni-	animāli-	calcāri-	
Bases	īnsign-	animāl-	calcār-	
		Singular		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	īnsigne	animāl	calcār	-e or —
<i>Gen.</i>	īsignis	animālis	calcāris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	īsignī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	īnsigne	animāl	calcār	-e or —
<i>Abl.</i>	īsignī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
		Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	īsignia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	īsignium	animālium	calcārium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	īsignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	īsignia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	īsignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus

466. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. *U*-STEMS

	adventus , m., <i>arrival</i>	cornū , n., <i>horn</i>		
Stems	adventu-	cornu-		
Bases	advent-	corn-		
		Singular		TERMINATIONS
				MASC. NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	adventus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	adventūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	adventuī (ū)	cornū	-uī (ū)	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	adventum	cornū	-um	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	adventū	cornū	-ū	-ū
		Plural		

<i>Nom.</i>	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	adventuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

232 467. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. *Ē*-STEMS

diēs, m., *day* **rēs**, f. *thing*

Stems	diē-	rē-	
Bases	di-	r-	
	Singular		TERMINATION
			S
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	reī	-ēī
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	reī	-ēī
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē	-ē
	Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum	rērum	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus

468. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

deus, m., *god* **domus**, f., *house* **vīs**, f., *strength* **iter**, n., *way*

Stems	deo-	domu-	vī- and vīri-	iter- and itiner-
Bases	de-	dom-	v- and vīr-	iter- and itiner-
		Singular		
<i>Nom.</i>	deus	domus	vīs	iter
<i>Gen.</i>	deī	domūs	vīs (rare)	itineris
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	domuī, -ō	vī (rare)	itinerī
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	domum	vīm	iter
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	domō, -ū	vī	itinere
		Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	deī, dī	domūs	vīrēs	itinerā
<i>Gen.</i>	deōrum, deum	domuum, -ōrum	vīrium	itinerum

<i>Dat.</i>	deī̄s, dīs	domibus	vīribus	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i>	deōs	domōs, -ūs	vīrīs, -ēs	itinerā
<i>Abl.</i>	deī̄s, dīs	domibus	vīribus	itineribus

a. The vocative singular of **deus** is like the nominative.

b. The locative of **domus** is **domī**.

233

ADJECTIVES

469. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. *O*- AND *Ā*-STEMS

a. Adjectives in **-us**

bonus, *good* Stems **bono-** m. and n., **bona-** f. Base **bon-**

	Singular		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō
	Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

b. Adjectives in **-er**

liber, *free* Stems **libero-** m. and n., **liberā-** f. Base **liber-**

	Singular		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō

	Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	līberī	līberae	lībera
<i>Gen.</i>	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	līberōs	līberās	lībera
<i>Abl.</i>	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

234

pulcher, *pretty* Stems **pulchro-** m. and n., **pulchrā-** f. Base **pulchr-**

	Singular		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

	Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

470. THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius, *another* Stems **alio-** m. and n., **aliā-** f. Base **ali-**

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
<i>Gen.</i>	aliūs	aliūs	aliūs	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
<i>Acc.</i>	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

ūnus, *one, only* Stems **ūno-** m. and n., **ūnā-** f. Base **ūn-**

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna

Abl. ūnō ūnā ūnō ūnīs ūnīs ūnīs

a. For the complete list see [§ 108](#).

235 471. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

I. THREE ENDINGS

	ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>keen, eager</i> Stem ācri- Base ācr-					
	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācre m	ācre m	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

II. TWO ENDINGS

	omnis, omne, <i>every, all</i>		Stem omni- Base omn-	
	Singular		Plural	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
<i>Gen.</i>	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i>	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	omnem	omne	omnīs, -ēs	omnia
<i>Abl.</i>	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

III. ONE ENDING

	pār, <i>equal</i> Stem pari- Base par-		
	Singular		Plural
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	pār	pār	parēs paria
<i>Gen.</i>	paris	paris	parium parium
<i>Dat.</i>	parī	parī	paribus paribus
<i>Acc.</i>	pare m	pār	parīs, -ēs paria
<i>Abl.</i>	parī	parī	paribus paribus

1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives have **-ī** in the ablative singular.

This sentence appears to be a footnote, but there is no footnote tag on the page.

236 472. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

	amāns, loving		Stem amanti-	Base amant-
	Singular		Plural	
	MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.		MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns	amantīs, -ēs	amantia
<i>Abl.</i>	amante, -ī	amante, -ī	amantibus	amantibus

	iēns, going		Stem ienti-, eunti-	Base ient-, eunt-
<i>Nom.</i>	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
<i>Gen.</i>	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
<i>Dat.</i>	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
<i>Acc.</i>	euntem	iēns	euntīs, -ēs	euntia
<i>Abl.</i>	eunte, -ī	eunte, -ī	euntibus	euntibus

473. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

	Positive	Comparative		Superlative	
	MASC.	MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.	MASC.	FEM. NEUT.	
	altus (alto-)	altior	altius	altissimus	-a -um
	līber (lībero-)	līberior	līberius	līberrimus	-a -um
	pulcher (pulchro-)	pulchrior	pulchrius	pulcherrimus	-a -um
	audāx (audāci-)	audācior	audācius	audācissimus	-a -um
	brevis (brevis-)	brevior	brevius	brevissimus	-a -um
	ācer (ācri-)	ācrior	ācrius	ācerrimus	-a -um

474. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

altior, higher

	Singular		Plural	
	MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.		MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum

<i>Dat.</i> altiōrī	altiōrī altiōribus	altiōribus
<i>Acc.</i> altiōrem	altius altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Abl.</i> altiōre	altiōre altiōribus	altiōribus

237

plūs, more

<i>Nom.</i> —	plūs plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i> —	plūris plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i> —	— plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i> —	plūs plūrīs (-ēs)	plūra
<i>Abl.</i> —	plūre plūribus	plūribus

475. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius, <i>greater</i>	maximus, -a, -um, <i>greatest</i>
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i>
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um, <i>smallest</i>
senex, senis, <i>old</i>	senior	maximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i>	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris, <i>old</i>	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i>	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>similar</i>	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>dissimilar</i>	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i>	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i>	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, <i>outward</i>	exterior, <i>outer, exterior</i>	extrēmus extimus <i>outermost, last</i>
īnferus, <i>below</i>	īnferior, <i>lower</i>	īnfirmus īmus <i>lowest</i>
posterus, <i>following</i>	posterior, <i>later</i>	postrēmus postumus <i>last</i>
superus, <i>above</i>	superior, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus summus <i>highest</i>
[cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i>]	citerior, <i>hither</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
[in, intrā, <i>in, within</i>]	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
[prae, prō, <i>before</i>]	prior, <i>former</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>

[prope, <i>near</i>]	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>next</i>
[ultrā, <i>beyond</i>]	ulterior, <i>further</i>	ultimus, <i>furthest</i>

238

476. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
cārē (cārus), <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
miserē (miser), <i>wretchedly</i>	miserius	miserrimē
ācritēr (ācer), <i>sharply</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (facilis), <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē

477. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
diū, <i>long, a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
bene (bonus), <i>well</i>	melius, <i>better</i>	optimē, <i>best</i>
male (malus), <i>ill</i>	peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimē, <i>worst</i>
magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis, <i>more</i>	maximē, <i>most</i>
multum (multus), <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimum, <i>most</i>
parum, <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē, <i>least</i>
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepīus	saepissimē

478. NUMERALS

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, the hundreds above one hundred, and **mille** used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like **bonus**, **-a**, **-um**.

	Cardinals		Ordinals	
	(How many)		(In what order)	
1,	ūnus, -a, -um,	<i>one</i>	prīmus, -a, -um	<i>first</i>
2,	duo, duae, duo	<i>two</i>	secundus (or alter)	<i>second</i>
3,	trēs, tria	<i>three,</i>	tertius	<i>third,</i>
4,	quattuor	<i>etc.</i>	quārtus	<i>etc.</i>
5,	quīnque		quīntus	
6,	sex		sextus	
7,	septem		septimus	
8,	octō		octāvus	
9,	novem		nōnus	
10,	decem		decimus	

11,	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12,	duodecim	duodecimus
13,	tredecim (decem (et) trēs)	tertius decimus
14,	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15, 239	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16,	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17,	septendecim	septimus decimus
18,	duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)	duodēvīcēsimus
19,	ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)	ūndēvīcēsimus
20,	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21,	vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī, etc.	vīcēsimus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīcēsimus, etc.
30,	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40,	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50,	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60,	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70,	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80,	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90,	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100,	centum	centum
101,	centum (et) ūnus, etc.	centum (et) ūnus, etc.
120,	centum (et) vīgintī	centum (et) vīgintī
121,	centum (et) vīgintī ūnus, etc.	centum (et) vīgintī ūnus, etc.
200,	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentī, -ae, -a
300,	trecentī	trecentī
400,	quadrīngentī	quadrīngentī
500,	quīngentī	quīngentī
600,	sescentī	sescentī
700,	septīngentī	septīngentī
800,	octīngentī	octīngentī
900,	nōngentī	nōngentī
1000,	mīlle	mīlle

479. Declension of **duo**, *two*, **trēs**, *three*, and **mīlle**, *a thousand*.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut. Sing.	Plur.
<i>N.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	trīa	mīlle mīlia
<i>G.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trīum	trīum	mīlle mīlium
<i>D.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīlle mīlibus

A. *duōs or duo duās duo trīs or trēs tria mille mīlia*
 A. *duōbus duābus duōbus tribus tribus mille mīlibus*

Note. **Mille** is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of **ūnus** cf. [§ 470](#).

240

PRONOUNS

480. PERSONAL

	ego, I		tū, you		suī, of himself, etc.	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrum, -trī	tuī	vestrum, -trī	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

Note that **suī** is always reflexive.

481. DEMONSTRATIVE

Demonstratives belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings **-ŭs** and **-ī** in the gen. and dat. sing.

ipse, self

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

hic, this (here), he

<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec

Abl. hōc hāc hōc hīs hīs hīs

iste, *this, that* (of yours), *he*

<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istī'us	istī'us	istī'us	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

241

ille, *that* (yonder), *he*

<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illī'us	illī'us	illī'us	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

is, *this, that, he*

<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

īdem, *the same*

<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	e'adem	idem	iī'dem eī'dem	eae'dem	e'adem
<i>Gen.</i>	eius'dem	eius'dem	eius'dem	eōrun'dem	eārun'dem	eōrun'dem
<i>Dat.</i>	eī'dem	eī'dem	eī'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem
<i>Acc.</i>	eun'dem	ean'dem	idem	eōs'dem	eās'dem	e'adem
<i>Abl.</i>	eō'dem	eā'dem	eō'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem

Note. In the plural of **is** and **īdem** the forms with two i's are preferred, the two i's being pronounced as one.

482. RELATIVE

quī, *who, which, that*

Singular

Plural

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

242 483. INTERROGATIVE

quis, substantive, *who, what*

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae	
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae	
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	

The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod**, is declined like the relative.

484. INDEFINITES

quis and **quī**, as declined above,¹ are used also as indefinites (*some, any*). The other indefinites are compounds of **quis** and **quī**.

quisque, *each*

	Substantive		Adjective		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisque	quidque	quisque	quaeque	quodque
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que
<i>Dat.</i>	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
<i>Acc.</i>	quemque	quidque	quemque	quamque	quodque
<i>Abl.</i>	quōque	quōque	quōque	quāque	quōque

1. **qua** is generally used instead of **quae** in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

485. **quīdam**, *a certain one, a certain*

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has **quoddam** and the substantive **quiddam**.

Singular

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam quiddam (<i>subst.</i>)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius'dam	cuius'dam	cuius'dam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quoddam quiddam (<i>subst.</i>)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

243 Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrun'dam	quārun'dam	quōrun'dam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus'dam	quibus'dam	quibus'dam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus'dam	quibus'dam	quibus'dam

486. quisquam, substantive, *any one* (at all)

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius'quam	cuius'quam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuiquam	cuiquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōquam	quōquam

487. aliquis, substantive, *some one*. **aliquī**, adjective, *some*

Singular

	Substantive		Adjective		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
<i>Gen.</i>	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquid	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquō	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

Plural for both Substantive and Adjective

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquō'rum	aliquā'rum	aliquō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus

Acc. aliquōs aliquās aliqua
 Abl. ali' quibus ali' quibus ali' quibus

a. **quis (quī)**, *any one, any*, is the least definite (§ 297. b). **aliquis (aliquī)**, *some one, some*, is more definite than **quis**. **quisquam**, *any one* (at all), and its adjective **ūllus**, *any*, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.

244

REGULAR VERBS

488. FIRST CONJUGATION. *Ā*-VERBS. *AMŌ*

Principal Parts **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus**

Pres. Stem amā- Perf. Stem amāv- Part. Stem amāt-

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I love, am loving, do love, etc.

I am loved, etc.

amō amāmus

amor amāmur

amās amātis

amāris, -re amāminī

amat amant

amātur amantur

IMPERFECT

I loved, was loving, did love, etc.

I was loved, etc.

amābam amābāmus

amābar amābāmur

amābās amābātis

amābāris, -re amābāminī

amābat amābant

amābātur amābantur

FUTURE

I shall love, etc.

I shall be loved, etc.

amābō amābimus

amābor amābimur

amābis amābitis

amāberis, -re amābiminī

amābit amābunt

amābitur amābuntur

PERFECT

I have loved, loved, did love, etc.

I have been (was) loved, etc.

amāvī amāvimus

sum sumus

amāvistī amāvistis

amātus, -a, -um es amātī, -ae, -a estis

amāvit amāvērunt, -re

est sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had loved, etc.

I had been loved, etc.

amāveram amāverāmus

amātus, -a, -um eram amātī, -ae, -a erāmus

amāverās	amāverātis	erās	erātis
amāverat	amāverant	erat	erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have loved, etc.

I shall have been loved, etc.

amāverō	amāverimus	erō	erimus
amāveris	amāveritis	amātus, -a, -um eris	amātī, -ae, -a eritis
amāverit	amāverint	erit	erunt

245 SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, -re	amēminī
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT

amārem	amāremus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, -re	amārēminī
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT

amāverim	amāverimus	sim	sīmus
amāveris	amāveritis	amātus, -a, -um sīs	amātī, -ae, -a sītis
amāverit	amāverint	sit	sint

PLUPERFECT

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	essem	essēmus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis	amātus, -a, -um essēs	amātī, -ae, -a essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

amā, *love thou*
amāte, *love ye*

amāre, *be thou loved*
amāminī, *be ye loved*

FUTURE

amātō, *thou shalt love*
amātō, *he shall love*
amātōte, *you shall love*
amantō, *they shall love*

amātor, *thou shalt be loved*
amātor, *he shall be loved*
——
amantor, *they shall be loved*

INFINITIVE

Pres. amāre, *to love*

amārī, *to be loved*

Perf. amāvisse, *to have loved*

amātus, -a, -um esse, *to have been loved*

Fut. amātūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to love* [amātum īrī], *to be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. amāns, **-antis**, *loving*
Fut. amātūrus, **-a, -um**, *about to love*
Perf. —

GERUND

Nom. —
Gen. amandī, *of loving*
Dat. amandō, *for loving*
Acc. amandum, *loving*
Abl. amandō, *by loving*

1. Sometimes called the future passive participle.

Pres. —
 Gerundive¹ amandus, **-a, -um**, *to be loved*
Perf. amātus, **-a, -um**, *having been loved, loved*

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [amātum], *to love*
Abl. [amātū], *to love, in the loving*

246 489. SECOND CONJUGATION. *Ē*-VERBS. *MONEŌ*

Principal Parts **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**

Pres. Stem **monē-** *Perf. Stem* **monu-** *Part. Stem* **monit-**

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I advise, etc.,

I am advised, etc.

moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris, -re	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

IMPERFECT

I was advising, etc.,

I was advised, etc.

monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris, -re	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbāntur

FUTURE

I shall advise, etc.,

I shall be advised, etc.

monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis, -re	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

PERFECT

I have advised, I advised, etc.

I have been (was) advised, etc.

monuī	monuimus	sum	sumus
monuistī	monuistis	monitus, -a, -um es	monitī, -ae, -a estis
monuit	monuērunt, -re	est	sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had advised, etc.,

I had been advised, etc.

monueram monuerāmus
monuerās monuerātis
monuerat monuerant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have advised, etc.

monuerō monuerimus
monueris monueritis
monuerit monuerint

247 SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

moneam moneāmus
moneās moneātis
moneat moneant

IMPERFECT

monērem monērēmus
monērēs monērētis
monēret monērent

PERFECT

monuerim monuerimus
monueris monueritis
monuerit monuerint

PLUPERFECT

monuissē monuissēmus
monuissēs monuissētis
monuisset monuissent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē, *advise thou*

monēte, *advise ye*

FUTURE

monētō, *thou shall advise*

monētō, *he shall advise*

monētōte, *you shall advise*

monentō, *they shall advise*

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre, *to advise*

Perf. monuisse, *to have advised*

Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to*

eram erāmus
monitus, -a, -um eras monitī, -ae, -a eratis
erat erant

I shall have been advised, etc.

erō erimus
monitus, -a, -um eris monitī, -ae, -a eritis
erit erunt

monear moneāmur
moneāris, -re moneāminī
moneātur moneantur

monērer monērēmur
monērēris, -re monērēminī
monērētur monērentur

sim sīmus
monitus, -a, -um sīs monitī, -ae, -a sītis
sit sint

essem essēmus
monitus, -a, -um essēs monitī, -ae, -a essētis
esset essent

monēre, *be thou advised*

monēminī, *be ye advised*

monētor, *thou shalt be advised*

monētor, *he shall be advised*

—

monentor, *they shall be advised*

monērī, *to be advised*

monitus, -a, -um esse, *to have been advised*

[monitum īrī], *to be about to be advised*

advise

PARTICIPLES

Pres. monēns, -entis, advising

Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um, about to advise

Perf. —

GERUND

Nom. —

Gen. monendī, of advising

Dat. monendō, for advising

Acc. monendum, advising

Abl. monendō, by advising

Pres. —

Ger. monendus, -a, -um, to be advised

Perf. monitus, -a, -um, having been advised, advised

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [monitum], to advise

Abl. [monitū], to advise, in the advising

248 490. THIRD CONJUGATION. Ę-VERBS. REGŌ

Principal Parts **regō, regere, rexī, rēctus**

Pres. Stem rege- Perf. Stem rēx- Part. Stem rēct-

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I rule, etc.

I am ruled, etc.

regō regimus

re'gor re'gimur

regis regitis

re'geris, -re regi'minī

regit regunt

re'gitur regun'tur

IMPERFECT

I was ruling, etc.

I was ruled, etc.

regēbam regēbāmus

regē'bar regēbā'mur

regēbās regēbātis

regēbā'ris, -re regēbā'minī

regēbat regēbant

regēbā'tur regēban'tur

FUTURE

I shall rule, etc.

I shall be ruled, etc.

regam regēmus

re'gar regē'mur

regēs regētis

regē'ris, -re regē'minī

reget regent

regē'tur regentur

PERFECT

I have ruled, etc.

I have been ruled, etc.

rēxī rēximus

sum sumus

rēxistī rēxistis

rēctus, -a, -um es rēctī, -ae, -a estis

rēxit rēxērunt, -re

est sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had ruled, etc.

rēxeram **rēxerāmus**
rēxerās **rēxerātis**
rēxerat **rēxerant**

I had been ruled, etc.

eram **erāmus**
rēctus, -a, -um **erās** **rēctī, -ae, -a** **erātis**
erat **erant**

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have ruled, etc.

rēxerō **rēxerimus**
rēxeris **rēxeritis**
rēxerit **rēxerint**

I shall have been ruled, etc.

erō **erimus**
rēctus, -a, -um **eris** **rēctī, -ae, -a** **eritis**
erit **erunt**

249 SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

regam **regāmus**
regās **regātis**
regat **regant**

regar **regāmur**
regāris, -re **regāminī**
regātur **regantur**

IMPERFECT

regerem **regerēmus**
regerēs **regerētis**
regeret **regerent**

regerer **regerēmur**
regerēris, -re **regerēminī**
regerētur **regerentur**

PERFECT

rēxerim **rēxerimus**
rēxeris **rēxeritis**
rēxerit **rēxerint**

sim **sīmus**
rēctus, -a, -um **sīs** **rēctī, -ae, -a** **sītis**
sit **sint**

PLUPERFECT

rēxissem **rēxissēmus**
rēxissēs **rēxissētis**
rēxisset **rēxissent**

essem **essēmus**
rēctus, -a, -um **essēs** **rēctī, -ae, -a** **essētis**
esset **essent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

rege, rule thou
regite, rule ye

regere, be thou ruled
regiminī, be ye ruled

FUTURE

regitō, thou shalt rule
regitō he shall rule
regitōte, ye shall rule
reguntō, they shall rule

regitor, thou shalt be ruled
regitor, he shall be ruled

reguntor, they shall be ruled

INFINITIVE

Pres. regere, to rule

regī, to be ruled

Perf. rēxisse, to have ruled

rēctus, -a, -um esse, to have been ruled

Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to rule [rēctum īrī], to be about to be ruled

PARTICIPLES

Pres. regēns, -entis, ruling

Pres. —

Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule

Ger. regendus, -a, -um, to be ruled

Perf. —

Perf. rēctus, -a, -um, having been ruled, ruled

GERUND

Nom. —

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Gen. regendī, of ruling

Acc [rēctum], to rule

Dat. regendō, for ruling

Abl. [rēctū], to rule, in the ruling

Acc. regendum, ruling

Abl. regendō, by ruling

250 491. FOURTH CONJUGATION. Ī-VERBS. *AUDIŌ*

Principal Parts **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**

Pres. Stem **audī-** Perf. Stem **audīv-** Part. Stem **audīt-**

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I hear, etc.

I am heard, etc.

audiō audīmus

au'dior audī'mur

audīs audītis

audī'ris, -re audī'minī

audit audiunt

audī'tur audiun'tur

IMPERFECT

I was hearing, etc.

I was heard, etc.

audiēbam audiēbāmus

audiē'bar audiēbā'mur

audiēbās audiēbātis

audiēbā'ris, -re audiēbā'minī

audiēbat audiēbant

audiēbā'tur audiēban'tur

FUTURE

I shall hear, etc.

I shall be heard, etc.

audiam audiēmus

au'diar audiē'mur

audiēs audiētis

audiē'ris, -re audiē'minī

audiet audient

audiē'tur audien'tur

PERFECT

I have heard, etc.

I have been heard, etc.

audīvī audīvīmus

audītus, -a, -um sum audītī, -ae, -a sumus

audīvistī audīvistis

es estis

audīvit	audīvērunt, -re		est	sunt
PLUPERFECT				
<i>I had heard, etc.</i>		<i>I had been heard, etc.</i>		
audīveram	audīverāmus		eram	erāmus
audīverās	audīverātis	audītus, -a, -um	erās	audītī, -ae, -a erātis
audīverat	audīverant		erat	erant
FUTURE PERFECT				
<i>I shall have heard, etc.</i>		<i>I shall have been heard, etc.</i>		
audīverō	audīverimus		erō	erimus
audīveris	audīveritis	audītus, -a, -um	eris	audītī, -ae, -a eritis
audīverit	audīverint		erit	erunt
251 SUBJUNCTIVE				
PRESENT				
audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur	
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, -re	audiāminī	
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur	
IMPERFECT				
audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur	
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris, -re	audīrēminī	
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur	
PERFECT				
audīverim	audiverimus		sim	sīmus
audīveris	audiveritis	audītus, -a, -um	sīs	audītī, -ae, -a sītis
audīverit	audīverint		sit	sint
PLUPERFECT				
audīvissem	audīvissēmus		essem	essēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis	audītus, -a, -um	essēs	audītī, -ae, -a essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent		esset	essent
IMPERATIVE				
PRESENT				
audī, <i>hear thou</i>		audīre, <i>be thou heard</i>		
audīte, <i>hear ye</i>		audīminī, <i>be ye heard</i>		
FUTURE				
audītō, <i>thou shalt hear</i>		audītor, <i>thou shalt be heard</i>		
audītō, <i>he shall hear</i>		audītor, <i>he shall be heard</i>		
audītōte, <i>ye shall hear</i>		—		
audiuntō, <i>they shall hear</i>		audiuntor, <i>they shall be heard</i>		
INFINITIVE				

Pres. audīre, to hear

audīrī, to be heard

audīvisse, to have heard

audītus, -a, -um esse, to have been heard

audītūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to hear [*audītum irī, to be about to be heard*]

PARTICIPLES

Pres. audiēns, -entis, hearing

Pres. —

Fut. audītūrus, -a, -um, about to hear

Ger. audiendus, -a, -um to be heard

Perf. —

Perf. audītus, -a, -um, having been heard, heard

GERUND

Nom. —

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Gen. audiendī, of hearing

Acc. [audītum], to hear

Dat. audiendō, for hearing

Abl. [audītu], to hear, in the hearing

Acc. audiendum, hearing

Abl. audiendō, by hearing

252 492. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -IŌ. CAPIŌ

Principal Parts **capīŏ, capere, cēpī, captus**

Pres. Stem **cape-** Perf. Stem **cēp-** Part. Stem **capt-**

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

capīŏ

capimus

ca'pior

ca'pimur

capis

capitis

ca'peris, -re

capī'minī

capit

capiunt

ca'pītur

capīun'tur

IMPERFECT

capīēbam

capiebamus

capīē'bar

capīēbā'mur

capīēbas

capīēbātis

capīēba'ris, -re

capīēbā'minī

capīēbat

capīēbant

capīēbā'tur

capīēban'tur

FUTURE

capiam

capīēmus

ca'piar

capīē'mur

capīēs

capīētis

capīē'ris, -re

capīē'minī

capiet

capient

capīē'tur

capīen'tur

PERFECT

cēpī, cēpīstī, cēpīt, etc.

captus, -a, -um sum, es, est, etc.

PLUPERFECT

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.

captus, -a, -um eram, erās, erat, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.

captus, -a, -um erō, eris, erit, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc. capiar, -iāris, -re, -iātur, etc.

IMPERFECT

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc. caperer, -erēris, -re, -erētur, etc.

PERFECT

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus, -a, -um sim, sīs, sit, etc.

PLUPERFECT

cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc. captus, -a, -um essem, essēs, esset, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d Pers. cape capite capere capimini

253 FUTURE

2d Pers. capitō capitōte capitor ———
3rd Pers. capitō capiuntō capitor capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. capere capī
Perf. cēpisse captus, -a, -um esse
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um esse [captum īrī]

PARTICIPLES

Pres. capiēns, -ientis Pres. ———
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um Ger. capiendus, -a, -um
Perf. ——— Perf. captus, -a, -um

GERUND

Gen. capiendī SUPINE (Active Voice)
etc. Acc. [captum]
Abl. [captū]

493. DEPONENT VERBS

- Principal Parts
- I. hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge
 - II. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear
 - III. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
 - IV. partior, partīrī, partītus sum, share, divide

Note. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star. Deponent -iō verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capiō.

Indicative

<i>Pres.</i>	hortor	vereor	sequor	partior
	hortāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	partīris, -re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	partītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	partīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	partīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	partiuntur
<i>Impf.</i>	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	partiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	partiar
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	partītus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	partītus eram
<i>F. P.</i>	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	partītus erō

254 Subjunctive

<i>Pres.</i>	horter	verear	sequar	partiar
<i>Impf.</i>	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	partīrer
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	partītus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	partītus essem

Imperative

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāre	verēre	sequere	partīre
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	partītor

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i>	hortārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	*hortātūrus esse	*veritūrus esse	*secūtūrus esse	*partītūrus esse

Participles

<i>Pres.</i>	*hortāns	*verēns	*sequēns	*partiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	*hortāturus	*veritūrus	*secūtūrus	*partītūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
<i>Ger.</i>	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

Gerund

*hortandī, etc. *verendī, etc. *sequendī, etc. *partiendī, etc.

Supine

*[hortātus, -tū] *[veritum, -tū] *[secūtum, -tū] *[partītum, -tū]

IRREGULAR VERBS

494. sum, am, be

Principal Parts **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

Pres. Stem **es-** Perf. Stem **fu-** Part. Stem **fut-**

Indicative

Present

SINGULAR

sum, *I am*
es, *thou art*
est, *he (she, it) is*

PLURAL

sumus, *we are*
estis, *you are*
sunt, *they are*

Imperfect

eram, *I was*
erās, *thou wast*
erat, *he was*

erāmus, *we were*
erātis, *you were*
erant, *they were*

255 Future

erō, *I shall be*
eris, *thou wilt be*
erit, *he will be*

erimus, *we shall be*
eritis, *you will be*
erunt, *they will be*

Perfect

fuī, *I have been, was*
fuistī, *thou hast been, wast*
fuit, *he has been, was*

fuius, *we have been, were*
fuistis, *you have been, were*
fuērunt, *fuēre, they have been, were*

Pluperfect

fueram, *I had been*
fuerās, *thou hadst been*
fuerat, *he had been*

fuerāmus, *we had been*
fuerātis, *you had been*
fuerant, *they had been*

Future Perfect

fuerō, *I shall have been*
fueris, *thou wilt have been*
fuerit, *he will have been*

fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerint, *they will have been*

Subjunctive

Present

SINGULAR

sim
sīs
sit

PLURAL

sīmus
sītis
sint

Imperfect

SINGULAR

essem
essēs
esset

PLURAL

essēmus
essētis
essent

Perfect

fuerim
fueris
fuerit

fuerimus
fueritis
fuerint

Pluperfect

fuissem
fuisēs
fuisset

fuissēmus
fuissētis
fuissent

Imperative

PRESENT

FUTURE

2d Pers. Sing. **es**, be thou

2d Pers. Sing. **estō**, thou shalt be

2d Pers. Plur. **este**, be ye

3d Pers. Sing. **estō**, he shall be

2d Pers. Plur. **estōte**, ye shall be

3d Pers. Plur. **suntō**, they shall be

Infinitive

Participle

Pres. **esse**, to be

Perf. **fuisse**, to have been

Fut. **futūrus, -a, -um esse** or **fore, futūrus, -a, -um**, about to be
to be about to be

256 **495. possum**, be able, can

Principal Parts **possum, posse, potuī**, —

Indicative

Subjunctive

SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL

Pres.	possum	pos' sumus	possim	possī' mus
	potes	potes' tis	possīs	possī' tis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
Impf.	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possē' mus
Fut.	poterō	poterimus	—	—
Perf.	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
Plup.	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P.	potuerō	potuerimus	—	—

Infinitive

Pres. **posse**

Perf. **potuisse**

Participle

Pres. **potens**, gen. -entis, (adjective) *powerful*

496. prōsum, benefit

Principal Parts **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus**

Pres. Stem **prōdes-** Perf. Stem **prōfu-** Part. Stem **prōfut-**

Indicative

Subjunctive

SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL

Pres.	prōsum	prō' sumus	prōsim	prōsī' mus
	prōdes	prōdes' tis	prōsīs	prōsī' tis
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
Impf.	prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prodessē' mus

<i>Fut.</i> prōderō	prōderimus	—	—
<i>Perf.</i> prōfuī	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus
<i>Plup.</i> prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
<i>F. P.</i> prōfuerō	prōfuerimus	—	—

Imperative

Pres. 2d Pers. prōdes, prōdeste *Fut. 2d Pers.* prōdestō, prōdestōte

Infinitive

Pres. prōdesse *Perf.* prōfuisse *Fut.* prōfutūrus, -a, -um esse
Future Participle prōfutūrus, -a, -um

257 497.

volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*

Principal Parts **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**, —, *be unwilling, will not*

mālō, mälle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer*

Nōlō and **mālō** are compounds of **volō**. **Nōlō** is for **ne** (*not*) + **volō**, and **mālō** for **mā** (from **magis**, *more*) + **volō**. The second person **vīs** is from a different root.

Indicative

SINGULAR

<i>Pres.</i> volō	nōlō	mālō
vīs	nōn vis	māvīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult

PLURAL

volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvul'tis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Impf.</i> volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i> volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
<i>Perf.</i> voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Plup.</i> volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>F. P.</i> voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Subjunctive

SINGULAR

<i>Pres.</i> velim	nōlim	mālim
velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
velit	nōlit	mālit

PLURAL

	velī'mus	nōlī'mus	mālī'mus
	velī'tis	nōlī'tis	mālī'tis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
<i>Impf.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

Imperative

<i>Pres.</i>	——	nōlī	——
		nōlīte	
<i>Fut.</i>	——	nōlītō, etc.	——

258 Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

Participle

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns, -entis	nōlēns, -entis	——
--------------	----------------	----------------	----

498. ferō, bear, carry, endure

Principal Parts **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**

Pres. Stem **fer-** Perf. Stem **tul-** Part. Stem **lāt-**

Indicative

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertīs	ferris, -re	ferimimī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
<i>Impf.</i>	ferēbam		ferēbar	
<i>Fut.</i>	feram, ferēs, etc.		ferar, ferēris, etc.	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī		lātus, -a, -um sum	
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram		lātus, -a, -um eram	
<i>F. P.</i>	tulerō		lātus, -a, -um erō	

Subjunctive

<i>Pres.</i>	feram, ferās, etc.	ferar, ferāris, etc.
<i>Impf.</i>	ferrem	ferrer
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim	lātus, -a, -um sim
<i>Plup.</i>	tulissem	lātus, -a, -um essem

Imperative

<i>Pres. 2d Pers.</i>	fer ferte	ferre	feriminī
<i>Fut. 2d Pers.</i>	fertō fertōte	fertor	

3d Pers. fertō ferunto fertor feruntor

Infinitive

Pres. ferre ferrī
Perf. tulisse lātus, -a, -um esse
Fut. lātūrus, -a, -um esse —

Participles

Pres. ferēns, -entis Pres. —
Fut. lātūrus, -a, -um Ger. ferendus, -a, -um
Perf. — Perf. lātus, -a, -um

259 Gerund Supine (Active Voice)

Gen. ferendī Acc. ferendum Acc. [lātum]

Dat. ferendō Abl. ferendō Abl. [lātū]

499. eō, go

Principal Parts eō, ire, iī (īvī), itum (n. perf. part.)

Pres. Stem ī- Perf. Stem ī- or īv- Part. Stem it-

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative	
			SING.	PLUR.
	eō īmus			
Pres.	īs ītis it eunt	eam	2d Pers. ī	īte
Impf.	ībam	īrem		
Fut.	ībō	—	2d Pers. itō 3d Pers. itō	itōte euntō
Perf.	iī (īvī)	ierim (īverim)		
Plup.	ieram (īveram)	īsem (īvissem)		
F. P.	ierō (īverō)			

Infinitive

Pres. ire Pres. iēns, gen. euntis (§ 472)
Perf. īsse (īvisse) Fut. itūrus, -a, -um
Fut. itūrus, -a, -um esse Ger. eundum

Participles

Pres. iēns, gen. euntis (§ 472)

Fut. itūrus, -a, -um

Ger. eundum

Gerund

Gen. eundī Acc. [itum]

Dat. eundō Abl. [itū]

Acc. eundum

Abl. eundō

Supine

a. The verb **eō** is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as **itur, itum est**, etc.

b. In the perfect system the forms with **v** are very rare.

500. fiō, passive of **faciō**; *be made, become, happen*

		Principal Parts fiō, fierī, factus sum			
		Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative	
		fiō	—		
<i>Pres.</i>		fīs	fiam	<i>2d Pers.</i> fi	fīte
		fit	fīunt		
<i>Impf.</i>		fīēbam	fierem		
<i>Fut.</i>		fīam	—		
<i>260 Perf.</i>		factus, -a, -um sum	factus, -a, -um sim		
<i>Plup.</i>		factus, -a, -um eram	factus, -a, -um essem		
<i>F. P.</i>		factus, -a, -um erō			
		Infinitive		Participles	
<i>Pres.</i>		fieri		<i>Perf.</i> factus, -a, -um	
<i>Perf.</i>		factus, -a, -um esse		<i>Ger.</i> faciendus, -a, -um	
<i>Fut.</i>		[factum iri]			



CASTRAMUROFOSSAQUEMUNIUNTUR

APPENDIX II

501. RULES OF SYNTAX

Note. The rules of syntax are here classified and numbered consecutively. The number of the text section in which the rule appears is given at the end of each.

Nominative Case

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative and answers the question Who? or What? [§ 36](#).

Agreement

2. A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject. [§ 28](#).

3. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb. [§ 76](#).

4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains. [§ 81](#).

5. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. [§ 65](#).

6. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb. [§ 215. a](#).

7. A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause. [§ 224](#).

Prepositions

8. A noun governed by a preposition must be in the accusative or ablative case. [§ 52](#).

Genitive Case

9. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive and answers the question Whose? [§ 38](#).

10. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of **sum**, and is then called the *predicate genitive*. [§ 409](#).

11. Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the *partitive genitive*. [§ 331](#).

12. Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective. [§ 443](#).

262 *Dative Case*

13. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. [§ 45](#).

14. The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs **crēdō**, **faveō**, **noceō**, **pāreō**, **persuādeō**, **resistō**, **studeō**, and others of like meaning. [§ 154](#).

15. Some verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative. [§ 426](#).

16. The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning *near*, also *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites. [§ 143](#).

17. The dative is used to denote the *purpose* or *end for which*; often with another dative denoting *the person or thing affected*. [§ 437](#).

Accusative Case

18. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative and answers the question Whom? or What? [§ 37](#).

19. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. [§ 214](#).

20. The *place to which* is expressed by **ad** or **in** with the accusative. Before names of towns, small islands, **domus**, and **rūs** the preposition is omitted. [§§ 263, 266](#).

21. *Duration of time* and *extent of space* are expressed by the accusative. [§ 336](#).

22. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *showing*, and the like, may take a *predicate accusative* along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives. [§ 392](#).

Ablative Case

23. *Cause* is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question Because of what? [§ 102](#).

24. *Means* is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question By means of what? or With what? [§ 103](#).

25. *Accompaniment* is denoted by the ablative with **cum**. This answers the question With whom? [§ 104](#).

26. The ablative with **cum** is used to denote the manner of an action. **Cum** may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question How? or In what manner? [§ 105](#).

27. With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the *measure of difference*. [§ 317](#).

263 28. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance. This is called the *ablative absolute*. [§ 381](#).

29. 1. Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective. [§ 444](#).

2. Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective. [§ 445](#).

30. The ablative is used to denote *in what respect* something is true. [§ 398](#).

31. The *place from which* is expressed by **ā** or **ab**, **dē**, **ē** or **ex** with the separative ablative. This answers the question Whence? Before names of towns, small islands, **domus**, and **rūs** the preposition is omitted. [§§ 264, 266](#).

32. Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning. This is called the *ablative of separation*. [§ 180](#).

33. The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab**. This is called the *ablative of the personal agent*. [§ 181](#).

34. The comparative degree, if **quam** is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative. [§ 309](#).

35. The *time when or within which* anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [§ 275](#).

36. 1. The *place at or in which* is expressed by the ablative with **in**. This answers the question Where? Before names of towns, small islands, and **rūs** the preposition is omitted. [§§ 265, 266](#).

2. Names of towns and small islands, if singular and of the first or second declension, and the word **domus** express the *place in which* by the locative. [§ 268](#).

Gerund and Gerundive

37. 1. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns. [§ 406. 1](#).

2. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual. [§ 406. 2](#).

38. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with **ad**, or the genitive with **causā**, is used to express purpose. [§ 407](#).

264 *Moods and Tenses of Verbs*

39. Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses, and secondary by secondary. [§ 358](#).

40. The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the *purpose* of the action in the principal clause. [§ 349](#).

41. A *substantive clause of purpose* with the subjunctive is used as object with verbs of *commanding, urging, asking, persuading, or advising*, where in English we should usually have the infinitive. [§ 366](#).

42. Verbs of *fearing* are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by **ut** (*that not*) or **nē** (*that or lest*). [§ 372](#).

43. *Consecutive clauses of result* are introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**, and have the verb in the subjunctive. [§ 385](#).

44. *Object clauses of result* with **ut** or **ut nōn** are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about. [§ 386](#).

45. A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the *subjunctive of characteristic or description*. [§ 390](#).

46. The conjunction **cum** means *when, since, or although*. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means *when* and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place. [§ 396](#).

47. When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive, and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive. [§ 416](#).

48. The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of *saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving*. [§ 419](#).

49. A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive. [§ 418](#).

50. In an *indirect question* the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence. [§ 432](#).



DOMINA

265

APPENDIX III

REVIEWS1

1. It is suggested that each of these reviews be assigned for a written test.

I. REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR THROUGH LESSON VIII

Lesson IX

502. Give the English of the following words:1

Nouns

agricola **dea** **gallīna** **pugna**
ancilla **domina** **iniūria** **sagitta**
aqua **fābula** **īnsula** **silva**
casa **fera** **lūna** **terra**
causa **filia** **nauta** **tuba**
cēna **fortūna** **pecūnia** **via**
corōna **fuga** **puella** **victōria**

Adjectives

alta **clāra** **lāta** **magna** **nova** **pulchra**
bona **grāta** **longa** **mala** **parva** **sōla**

Verbs

amat **est** **labōrat** **nārrat** **nūntiat** **portat** **sunt**
dat **habitat** **laudat** **necat** **parat** **pugnat** **vocat**

Prepositions **Pronouns** **Adverbs** **Conjunctions** **Interrogative Particle**

ā or **ab** **mea** **cūr** **et** **-ne**

ad	tua	deinde	quia
cum	quis	nōn	quod
dē	cuius	ubi	
ē or ex	cui		
in	quem		
	quid		

1. Proper nouns and proper adjectives are not repeated in the reviews. Words used in Cassar's "Gallic War" are in heavy type.

266 503. Give the Latin of the following words:1

Underline the words you do not remember. Do not look up a single word till you have gone through the entire list. Then drill on the words you have underlined.

	<i>wide</i>		
	tells	<i>goddess</i>	
<i>flight</i>	<i>money</i>	<i>wild beast</i>	<i>what</i>
story	<i>calls</i>		<i>way</i>
<i>new</i>	<i>with</i>	<i>praises (verb)</i>	<i>bad</i>
lives (verb)	<i>your</i>		loves
<i>away from</i>		<i>alone</i>	<i>pretty</i>
<i>who</i>		<i>pleasing</i>	<i>water</i>
<i>why</i>	<i>then, in the</i>	<i>prepares</i>	<i>great</i>
<i>forest</i>	<i>next place</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>wreath</i>		<i>to</i>	<i>announces</i>
<i>deep, high</i>	<i>daughter</i>	<i>because</i>	
dinner	<i>to whom</i>	<i>arrow</i>	<i>injury, wrong</i>
<i>famous</i>	<i>fortune</i>	<i>my</i>	
<i>cottage</i>	<i>out from</i>	<i>kills</i>	<i>where</i>
		girl	<i>not</i>
<i>battle (noun)</i>	<i>labors (verb)</i>		<i>good</i>
		<i> fights (verb)</i>	maid
<i>trumpet</i>	<i>gives</i>		<i>down from</i>
lady, mistress	<i>small</i>	<i>carries</i>	<i>long</i>
<i>whom</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>chicken</i>	<i>cause</i>
<i>island</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>victory</i>	<i>whose</i>
	<i>sailor</i>	<i>land</i>	
	farmer		

1. The translations of words used in Cæsar are in italics.

504. Review Questions. How many syllables has a Latin word? How are words divided into syllables? What is the ultima? the penult? the antepenult? When is a syllable short? When is a syllable long? What is the law of Latin accent? Define the subject of a sentence; the predicate; the object; the copula. What is inflection? declension? conjugation? What is the ending of the verb in the third person singular, and what in the plural? What does the form of a noun show? Name the Latin cases. What case is used for the subject? the direct object? the possessor? What relation is expressed by the dative case? Give the rule for the indirect object. How are questions

answered in Latin? What is a predicate adjective? an attributive adjective? What is meant by agreement? Give the rule for the agreement of the adjective. What are the three relations expressed by the ablative? What can you say of the position of the possessive pronoun? the modifying genitive? the adjective? What is the base? What is grammatical gender? What is the rule for gender in the first declension? What are the general principles of Latin word order?

267

505. Fill out the following summary of the first declension:

1. Ending in the nominative singular
 2. Rule for gender
 3. Case terminations
 4. Irregular nouns
- The First or \bar{A} -Declension
- a. Singular
 - b. Plural

[Go on to Lesson IX](#)

II. REVIEW OF LESSONS IX-XVII

[Lesson XVIII](#)

506. Give the English of the following words:

Nouns of the First Declension

agrī culturā cōpia fāma galea lacrima patria
cōstantia diligentia fēmina inopia lōrīca praeda

Nouns of the Second Declension

ager	cibus	frūmentum	oppidānus	scūtum
amīcus	cōsilium	gladius	oppidum	servus
arma (plural)	domicilium	lēgātus	pīlum	studium
auxilium	dominus	liberī	populus	tēlum
bellum	equus	magister	praemium	vīcus
carrus	filius	mūrus	proelium	vir
castrum	fluvius	numerus	puer	

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

aeger, aegra, aegrum	neuter, neutra, neutrum
alius, alia, aliud	noster, nostra, nostrum
alter, altera, alterum	alter, altera, alterum
armātus, -a, -um	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum	sōlus, -a, -um
dūrus, -a, -um	suus, -a, -um
fīnitimus, -a, -um	fīnitimus, -a, -um
īnfirmitus, -a, -um	tuus, -a, -um
legiōnārius, -a, -um	ūllus, -a, -um

liber, libera, liberum **ūnus, -a, -um**
mātūrus, -a, -um **uter, utra, utrum**
meus, -a, -um **validus, -a, -um**
miser, misera, miserum **vester, vestra, vestrum**
multus, -a, -um

268 Verbs	Demonstrative Pronoun	Adverbs
	is, ea, id	iam
arat		quō
cūrat	Conjunctions	saepe
dēsiderat		
mātūrat	an	Preposition
properat	-que	
	sed	apud

507. Give the Latin of the following words:

		<i>shield</i> (noun)	
<i>sword</i>		<i>whole</i>	<i>plan</i> (noun)
<i>corselet</i>	<i>war</i>	<i>it</i>	<i>people</i>
<i>man</i>	<i>number</i>	<i>aid</i> (noun)	<i>beautiful</i>
	<i>my</i>	<i>legionary</i>	<i>no</i> (adj.)
<i>your</i> (plural)	<i>free</i> (adj.)	<i>weak</i>	<i>our</i>
	<i>children</i>	<i>arms</i>	<i>battle</i>
<i>hasten</i>	<i>wall</i>		<i>spear</i>
<i>but</i>	<i>grain</i>	<i>master</i>	<i>food</i>
<i>among</i>	<i>weapon</i>	(of school)	<i>steadiness</i>
<i>tear</i> (noun)	<i>one</i>		<i>fatherland</i>
<i>village</i>	<i>plow</i> (verb)	<i>friend</i>	<i>town</i>
<i>strong</i>	<i>this</i> or <i>that</i>	<i>neighboring</i>	<i>fort</i>
<i>long for</i>	<i>already</i>	<i>sick</i>	<i>camp</i>
<i>and</i> (enclitic)	<i>helmet</i>	<i>lieutenant</i>	
<i>often</i>	<i>river</i>	<i>field</i>	<i>neither</i> (of two)
<i>want</i> (noun)	<i>zeal</i>	<i>report, rumor</i>	
<i>which</i> (of two)	<i>any</i>	<i>abode</i>	<i>much</i>
<i>care for</i>	<i>he</i>	<i>boy</i>	<i>agriculture</i>
	<i>son</i>	<i>his own</i>	<i>other</i>
<i>or</i> (in a question)	<i>slave</i>	<i>alone</i>	
	<i>your</i> (singular)	<i>prize</i> (noun)	<i>the other</i> (of two)
<i>whither</i>		<i>master</i> (owner)	<i>hard</i>
<i>wagon</i>	<i>she</i>		<i>booty</i>
<i>townsman</i>	<i>woman</i>	<i>carefulness</i>	<i>frequent</i>
<i>wretched</i>	<i>horse</i>	<i>plenty</i>	<i>armed</i>
<i>ripe</i>		<i>troops</i>	

508. Review Questions. How many declensions are there? What three things must be known about a noun before it can be declined? What three cases of neuter nouns are always alike, and in what do they end in the plural? What two plural cases are always alike? When is the vocative singular not like the nominative? What is a predicate noun? With what does it agree? What is an appositive? Give the rule for the agreement of an appositive. How can we tell whether a noun in **-er** is declined like **puer** or like **ager**? 269 Decline **bonus, liber, pulcher**. How can we tell whether an adjective in **-er** is declined like **liber** or like **pulcher**? Why must we say **nauta bonus** and not **nauta bona**? Name the Latin possessive pronouns. How are they declined? With what does the possessive pronoun agree? When do we use **tuus** and when **vester**? Why is **suus** called a *reflexive* possessive? What is the non-reflexive possessive of the third person? When are possessives omitted? What four uses of the ablative case are covered by the relations expressed in English by *with*? Give an illustration in Latin of the *ablative of manner*; of the *ablative of cause*; of the *ablative of means*; of the *ablative of accompaniment*. What ablative regularly has **cum**? What ablative sometimes has **cum**? What uses of the ablative never have **cum**? Name the nine pronominal adjectives, with their meanings. Decline **alius, nullus**. Decline **is**. What does **is** mean as a demonstrative adjective or pronoun? What other important use has it?

509. Fill out the following summary of the second declension:

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| | 1. Endings in the nominative | |
| | 2. Rule for gender | |
| | 3. Case terminations of nouns in -us | a. Singular
b. Plural |
| The Second or
O-Declension | a. The vocative singular of nouns in -us | |
| | 4. Case terminations of nouns in -um | a. Singular
b. Plural |
| | 5. Peculiarities of nouns in -er and -ir | |
| | 6. Peculiarities of nouns in -ius and -ium | |

[Go on to Lesson XVIII](#)

III. REVIEW OF LESSONS XVIII-XXVI

[Lesson XXVII](#)

510. Give the English of the following words:

Nouns of the First Declension

disciplīna poena rēgīna **trīstitia**
fōrma **potentia** superbia

Nouns of the Second Declension

lūdus **ōrnāmentum** **sacrum** **socius** **verbum**

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

amīcus grātus interfectus molestus
antīquus idōneus irātus perpetuus septem
finitimus inimīcus laetus proximus superbus

270 Adverbs Conjunctions Personal Pronoun
hodiē mox
etiam
ibi nunc nōn solum ... sed etiam **ego**
maximē nūper

Verbs

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
	dēleō, -ēre	agō, -ere	
	doceō, -ēre	capiō, -ere	
	faveō, -ēre	crēdō, -ere	
volō, -āre	habeō, -ēre	dīcō, -ere	
	iubeō, -ēre	dūcō, -ere	audiō, -īre
	moneō, -ēre	faciō, -ere	mūniō, -īre
	moveō, -ēre	fugiō, -ere	reperiō, -īre
IRREGULAR VERB	noceō, -ēre	iaciō, -ere	veniō, -īre
sum, esse	pāreō, -ēre	mittō, -ere	
	persuādeō, -ēre	rapiō, -ere	
	sedeō, -ēre	regō, -ere	
	studeō, -ēre	resistō, -ere	
	videō, -ēre		

511. Give the Latin of the following words. In the case of verbs always give the first form and the present infinitive.

<i>ancient</i>	<i>not only ... but also</i>	<i>nearest</i>	<i>move</i>	<i>training</i>
<i>come</i>		<i>sacred rite</i>	<i>soon</i>	<i>take</i>
<i>resist</i>	<i>seven</i>	<i>queen</i>	<i>glad</i>	<i>have</i>
<i>see</i>	<i>ally, companion</i>	<i>flee</i>	<i>punishment</i>	<i>to-day</i>
<i>be</i>	<i>pride</i>	<i>obey</i>	<i>believe</i>	<i>unfriendly</i>
<i>fly</i>	<i>fortify</i>	<i>lately</i>	<i>advise</i>	<i>drive</i>
<i>I</i>	<i>send</i>	<i>constant</i>	<i>especially,</i>	<i>favor (verb)</i>
<i>proud</i>	<i>sit</i>	<i>ornament</i>	<i>most of all</i>	<i>suitable</i>
<i>word</i>	<i>also</i>	<i>power</i>		<i>pleasing</i>
<i>sadness</i>	<i>school</i>	<i>make, do</i>	<i>angry</i>	<i>teach</i>
<i>find</i>	<i>hear</i>	<i>injure</i>	<i>beauty</i>	<i>neighboring</i>
<i>rule (verb)</i>	<i>hurl</i>	<i>now</i>	<i>say</i>	<i>destroy</i>
<i>be eager for</i>	<i>persuade</i>	<i>annoying</i>	<i>command (verb)</i>	<i>friendly</i>
	<i>only</i>	<i>lead</i>	<i>there</i>	<i>seize</i>
			<i>slain</i>	

512. Review Questions. What is conjugation? Name two important differences between conjugation in Latin and in English. What is tense? 271 What is mood? What are the Latin moods? When do we use the indicative mood? Name the six tenses of the indicative. What are personal endings? Name those you have had. Inflect **sum** in the three tenses you have learned. How many regular conjugations are there? How are they distinguished? How is the present stem found? What tenses are formed from the present stem? What is the tense sign of the imperfect? What is the meaning of the imperfect? What is the tense sign of the future in the first two conjugations? in the last two? Before what letters is a final long vowel of the stem shortened? What are the three possible translations of a present, as of **pugnō**? Inflect **arō, sedeō, mittō, faciō, and veniō**, in the present, imperfect, and future active. What forms of **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation are like **audiō**? what like **regō**? Give the rule for the dative with adjectives. Name the special intransitive verbs that govern the dative. What does the imperative mood express? How is the present active imperative formed in the singular? in the plural? What three verbs have a shortened present active imperative? Give the present active imperative of **portō, dēleō, agō, faciō, mūniō**.

[Go on to Lesson XXVII](#)

IV. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXVII-XXXVI

[Lesson XXXVII](#)

513. Give the English of the following words:

Nouns of the First Declension

āla cūra mora porta prōvincia vīta

Nouns of the Second Declension

animus brachium locus nāvīgium perīculum vīnum
aurum deus mōnstrum ōrāculum ventus

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

adversus commōtus dubius plēnus
attentus dēfessus maximus saevus
cārus dexter perfidus sinister

Adverbs

anteā diū ita subitō
celeriter frūstrā longē tamen
dēnique graviter semper tum

Conjunctions

autem sī ubi

272 Prepositions

dē per prō sine

Verbs

CONJ. I

CONJ. II

adpropinquō	recūsō	superō	contineō
nāvigō	reportō	temptō	egeō
occupō	servō	vāstō	prohibeō
postulō	stō	vulnerō	respondeō
			teneō
CONJ. III			IRREGULAR VERB
discēdō	gerō	interficiō	absum

514. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

<i>be away</i>	<i>moreover</i>	<i>boat, ship</i>	<i>without</i>	<i>before,</i>
<i>wind</i>	<i>greatest</i>	<i>sail (verb)</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>previously</i>
<i>through</i>	<i>oracle</i>	<i>life</i>	<i>suddenly</i>	
<i>if</i>	<i>danger</i>	<i>save</i>	<i>dear</i>	<i>depart,</i>
<i>savage</i>	<i>lay waste</i>	<i>full</i>	<i>always</i>	<i>go away</i>
<i>wound (verb)</i>	<i>gate</i>	<i>refuse</i>	<i>god</i>	
<i>wine</i>	<i>doubtful</i>	<i>heavily</i>		<i>province</i>
<i>delay</i>		<i>monster</i>	<i>hold in, keep</i>	<i>care, trouble</i>
<i>faithless</i>	<i>opposite, adverse</i>	<i>approach</i>		<i>kill</i>
<i>right</i>		<i>nevertheless</i>	<i>afar</i>	
<i>seize</i>	<i>demand</i>	<i>place</i>		<i>reply (verb)</i>
<i>quickly</i>	<i>finally</i>		<i>thus, so,</i>	
	<i>attentive</i>	<i>be without,</i>	<i>as follows</i>	<i>wing</i>
<i>before, in behalf</i>		<i>lack</i>		<i>mind, heart</i>
<i>of</i>	<i>then, at that time</i>		<i>arm (noun)</i>	<i>left (adj.)</i>
		<i>moved</i>	<i>when</i>	<i>bear, carry on</i>
<i>battle</i>	<i>weary</i>	<i>gold</i>	<i>in vain</i>	<i>try</i>
			<i>stand</i>	
<i>down from or</i>	<i>overcome,</i>	<i>restrain, keep from</i>	<i>bring back, win</i>	<i>for a long time</i>
<i>concerning</i>	<i>conquer</i>			

515. Give the principal parts and meaning of the following verbs:

sum	moveō	moneō	pāreō	veniō
dō	crēdō	capiō	dūcō	iaciō
teneō	rapiō	doceō	faciō	videō
iubeō	reperiō	regō	persuādeō	absum
agō	dēleō	faveō	sedeō	egeō
mittō	resistō	noceō	studeō	gerō
mūniō	audiō	dīcō	fugiō	stō

273 **516. Review Questions.** What are the personal endings in the passive voice? What is the letter -r sometimes called? What are the distinguishing vowels of the four conjugations? What forms constitute the principal parts? What are the three different conjugation stems? How may

they be found? What are the tenses of the indicative? of the infinitive? What tense of the imperative have you learned? What forms are built on the present stem? on the perfect stem? on the participial stem? What are the endings of the perfect active indicative? What is the tense sign of the pluperfect active? of the future perfect active? How is the present active infinitive formed? the present passive infinitive? How is the present active imperative formed? the present passive imperative? How is the perfect active infinitive formed? the perfect passive infinitive? How is the future active infinitive formed? What is a participle? How are participles in **-us** declined? Give the rule for the agreement of the participle. How are the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative formed? Conjugate the verb **sum** in all moods and tenses as far as you have learned it (§ 494). What is meant by the separative ablative? How is the place *from which* expressed in Latin? Give the rule for the ablative of separation; for the ablative of the personal agent. How can we distinguish between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent? What is the perfect definite? the perfect indefinite? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect indefinite and the imperfect? What two cases in Latin may be governed by a preposition? Name the prepositions that govern the ablative. What does the preposition **in** mean when it governs the ablative? the accusative? What are the three interrogatives used to introduce *yes-and-no* questions? Explain the force of each. What words are sometimes used for *yes* and *no*? What are the different meanings and uses of **ubi**?

[Go on to Lesson XXXVII](#)

V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVII-XLIV

[Lesson XLV](#)

517. Give the English of the following words:

Nouns

FIRST DECLENSION SECOND DECLENSION

rīpa **barbarī castellum**
captīvus impedīmentum

THIRD DECLENSION

animal	collis	homō	legiō	ōrdō	soror
arbor	cōsul	hostīs	mare	pater	tempus
avis	dēns	ignis	māter	pedes	terror
caedēs	dux	imperātor	mēnsis	pēs	turris
274 calamitās	eques	īsigne	mīles	pōns	urbs
calcar	fnis	iter	mōns	prīnceps	victor
caput	flūmen	iūdex	nāvis	rēx	virtūs
cīvis	fōns	labor	opus	salūs	vīs
cliēns	frāter	lapis	ōrātor	sanguis	

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

barbarus dexter sinister summus

Prepositions Adverbs Conjunctions

in with the abl. **cotīdiē** **nec, neque**
 in with the acc. **numquam**
trāns **nec ... nec, or neque ... neque**

Verbs

CONJ. I CONJ. III
cessō **oppugnō accipiō petō vincō**
confirmō vetō **incipiō ponō vivō**

518. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

<i>forbid</i>			<i>redoubt, fort</i>
<i>rank, row</i>	<i>man-of-war</i>		<i>sea</i>
<i>brother</i>	<i>judge</i>	<i>conquer</i>	<i>tower</i>
<i>force</i>		<i>consul</i>	
<i>across</i>	<i>defeat, disaster</i>	<i>mother</i>	<i>drill (verb)</i>
<i>savages</i>		<i>retainer</i>	
<i>horseman</i>	<i>fire</i>	<i>citizen</i>	<i>legion</i>
<i>never</i>	<i>tree</i>	<i>head</i>	<i>terror</i>
<i>mountain</i>	<i>foot soldier</i>	<i>safety</i>	
	<i>receive</i>		<i>into, to</i>
<i>manliness,</i>	<i>general</i>	<i>assail, storm</i>	
<i>courage</i>	<i>highest</i>		<i>right (adj.)</i>
	<i>fountain</i>	<i>begin</i>	<i>in</i>
<i>leader</i>	<i>orator</i>	<i>march</i>	<i>stone</i>
<i>put, place</i>		<i>decoration</i>	<i>blood</i>
<i>time</i>	<i>neither ... nor</i>	<i>bridge</i>	
		<i>bird</i>	<i>labor (noun)</i>
<i>savage,</i>	<i>and not</i>	<i>cease</i>	
<i>barbarous</i>	<i>left</i>	<i>man</i>	<i>king</i>
	<i>tooth</i>	<i>river</i>	<i>spur</i>
<i>sister</i>	<i>soldier</i>		<i>chief</i>
<i>seek</i>	<i>month</i>	<i>work (noun)</i>	<i>slaughter</i>
<i>captive</i>	<i>city</i>		<i>strengthen</i>
	<i>victor</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>foot</i>
<i>hindrance,</i>	<i>daily</i>	<i>ship</i>	<i>enemy</i>
<i>baggage</i>	<i>live (verb)</i>	<i>bank</i>	<i>animal</i>
			<i>father</i>

275 **519. Review Questions.** Give the conjugation of **possum**. What is an infinitive? What three uses has the Latin infinitive that are like the English? What is the case of the subject of the infinitive? What is meant by a complementary infinitive? In the sentence *The bad boy cannot be happy*, what is the case of *happy*? Give the rule. Decline **quī**. Give the rule for the agreement of the relative. What are the two uses of the interrogative? Decline **quis**. What is the base of a noun? How is the stem formed from the base? Are the stem and the base ever the same? How many

declensions of nouns are there? Name them. What are the two chief divisions of the third declension? How are the consonant stems classified? Explain the formation of **lapis** from the stem **lapid-**, **mīles** from **mīlit-**, **rēx** from **rēg-**. What nouns have **i**-stems? What peculiarities of form do **i**-stems have,—masc., fem., and neut.? Name the five nouns that have **-ī** and **-e** in the abl. Decline **turris**. Give the rules for gender in the third declension. Decline **mīles**, **lapis**, **rēx**, **virtūs**, **cōnsul**, **legiō**, **homō**, **pater**, **flūmen**, **opus**, **tempus**, **caput**, **caedēs**, **urbs**, **hostis**, **mare**, **animal**, **vīs**, **iter**.

520. Fill out the following scheme:

		Masculine	
	Gender Endings	Feminine	
		Neuter	
The Third Declension		I. Consonant Stems	<i>a.</i> Masc. and <i>fem.</i> <i>b.</i> Neuters
	Case Terminations	II. <i>I</i> -Stems	<i>a.</i> Masc. and <i>fem.</i> <i>b.</i> Neuters
		Irregular Nouns	

[Go on to Lesson XLV](#)

VI. REVIEW OF LESSONS XLV-LII

[Lesson LIII](#)

521. Give the English of the following words:

Nouns

FIRST DECLENSION SECOND DECLENSION

		rēgnum	
amīcītia	annus	signum	tergum,
hōra	modus		tergum vertere
littera	nūntius	supplicium,	
	oculus	supplicium dare	vestīgium
		supplicium sūmere dē	

276 THIRD DECLENSION FOURTH DECLENSION

aestās	nox	adventus	impetus
corpus	pars	cornū	lacus
hiems	pāx	domus	manus
libertās	rūs	equitātus	metus
	sōl	exercitus	portus
lūx,	vōx	fluctus	
	vulnus		

prīma lūx

nōmen

FIFTH DECLENSION

INDECLINABLE NOUN

aciēs **rēs,**
diēs **rēs gestae**
 rēs adversae spēs nihil
fidēs, **rēs pūblica**
in fidem venīre **rēs secundae**

Adjectives

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS THIRD DECLENSION

dēnsus	prīstinus	ācer, ācris, ācre	gravis, grave
invīsus	pūblicus	brevis, breve	incolumis, incolume
mīrus	secundus	difficilis, difficile	omnis, omne
paucī	tantus	facīlis, facile	pār, pār
prīmus	vērū	fortis, forte	vēlōx, vēlōx

Pronouns

PERSONAL DEMONSTRATIVE INTENSIVE INDEFINITE

ego	hic		aliquis, aliquī
nōs	īdem		quīdam
suī	ille	ipse	quis, quī
tū	iste		quisquam
vōs			quisque

Adverbs

Conjunctions Prepositions

nē ... quidem	paene	satis itaque	ante
ōlim	quoque	vērō nisi	post
			propter

Verbs

CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV

		committō,	
		committere	proelium
conlocō	dēbeō	dēcidō	
convocō	exerceō	ēripiō	
cremō	maneō		dēsiliō
dēmōnstrō	placeō	sūmō,	
mandō	sustineō	sūmere supplicium	dē
		trādūcō	
		vertō	

277 522. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

<i>if not, unless</i>	<i>adversity</i>		<i>peace</i>
<i>on account of</i>	<i>former, old-time</i>	<i>burn</i>	<i>back</i>
<i>unharméd public commonwealth</i>	<i>all, every</i>	<i>that (of yours)</i>	<i>turn the back, retreat</i>
<i>leap down, dismount</i>	<i>any one (at all)</i>	<i>before you (plur.)</i>	<i>night</i>
<i>lead across remain</i>	<i>this (of mine)</i>	<i>light daybreak</i>	<i>hand, force</i>
<i>call together</i>	<i>heavy, serious</i>	<i>winter attack</i>	<i>lake day</i>
<i>friendship</i>	<i>hateful, detested</i>	<i>line of battle</i>	<i>commit, intrust</i>
<i>footprint, trace</i>	<i>true burn</i>	<i>army</i>	<i>a few only</i>
<i>each</i>	<i>snatch from letter punishment</i>	<i>drill, train join battle house, home midday</i>	<i>sharp, eager</i>
<i>fear (noun)</i>	<i>inflict punishment on</i>	<i>wonderful brave almost</i>	<i>we turn you (sing.) I</i>
<i>hope therefore</i>	<i>suffer punishment liberty</i>	<i>the same some, any</i>	<i>signal summer cavalry</i>
<i>behind, after</i>	<i>sun sustain</i>	<i>if any one</i>	<i>wound horn, wing country</i>
<i>so great equal</i>	<i>take up, assume</i>	<i>self, very not even easy</i>	<i>second, favorable</i>
<i>in truth, indeed</i>	<i>hour reign, realm messenger</i>	<i>dense</i>	<i>short voice</i>
<i>that (yonder)</i>	<i>part, direction</i>	<i>point out, explain</i>	<i>formerly, once</i>
<i>a certain fall down owe, ought</i>	<i>body harbor</i>	<i>difficult first</i>	<i>arrival</i>
<i>measure, mode</i>	<i>faith, protection</i>	<i>arrange, station</i>	<i>come under the protection of</i>
<i>eye name wave, billow</i>	<i>of himself also, too sufficiently</i>	<i>please year</i>	<i>swift nothing</i>

thing, matter

exploits

republic

prosperity

523. Review Questions. By what declensions are Latin adjectives declined? What can you say about the stem of adjectives of the third declension? Into what classes are these adjectives divided? How can you tell to which of the classes an adjective belongs? Decline **acer, omnis, pār**. What are the nominative endings and genders of nouns of the fourth 278 or **u**-declension? What nouns are feminine by exception? Decline **adventus, lacus, cornū, domus**. Give the rules for the ordinary expression of the *place to which*, the *place from which*, the *place in which*. What special rules apply to names of towns, small islands, and **rūs**? What is the locative case? What words have a locative case? What is the form of the locative case? Translate *Galba lives at home, Galba lives at Rome, Galba lives at Pompeii*. What is the rule for gender in the fifth or **ē**-declension? Decline **diēs, rēs**. When is the long **ē** shortened? What can you say about the plural of the fifth declension? Decline **tuba, servus, pīlum, ager, puer, mīles, cōsul, flūmen, caedēs, animal**. How is the *time when* expressed? Name the classes of pronouns and define each class. Decline **ego, tū, is**. What are the reflexives of the first and second persons? What is the reflexive of the third person? Decline it. Translate *I see myself, he sees himself, he sees him*. Decline **ipse**. How is **ipse** used? Decline **īdem**. Decline **hic, iste, ille**. Explain the use of these words. Name and translate the commoner indefinite pronouns. Decline **aliquis, quisquam, quīdam, quisque**.

[Go on to Lesson LIII](#)

VII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LIII-LX

[Lesson LXI](#)

524. Give the English of the following words:

Nouns

FIRST DECLENSION SECOND DECLENSION

aquila	aedificium	imperium spatium
fossa	captīvus	negōtium vāllum
	concilium	

THIRD DECLENSION

agmen	gēns	mors	regiō
celeritās	lātitūdō	mulier	rūmor
cīvitās	longitūdō	multitūdō	scelus
clāmor	magnitūdō	mūnitiō	servitūs
cohors	mēns	nēmō	timor
difficultās	mercātor	obses	vallēs
explōrātor	mille	opīniō	

FOURTH DECLENSION FIFTH DECLENSION

aditus
commeātus passus rēs frūmentāria

279 Adjectives

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

aequus	maximus	plūrimus	singulī
bīnī	medius	posterus	superus
ducentī	minimus	prīmus	tardus
duo	opportūnus	reliquus	ternī
exterus	optimus	secundus	ūnus
īferus	pessimus		

THIRD DECLENSION

alacer, alacris, alacre	humilis, humile	peior, peius
audāx, audāx	ingēns, ingēns	——, plūs
celer, celeris, celere	interior, interius	prior, prius
citerior, citerius	lēnis, lēne	recēns, recēns
difficilis, difficile	maior, maius	similis, simile
dissimilis, dissimile	melior, melius	trēs, tria
facilis, facile	minor, minus	ulterior, ulterius
gracilis, gracile	nōbilis, nōbile	

Adverbs

ācritēr	magis	optimē	proximē
audācter	magnopere	parum	quam
bene	maximē	paulō	statim
facile	melius	plūrimum	tam
ferē	minimē	prope	undique
fortiter	multum	propius	

Conjunctions

Prepositions

atque, ac	quā dē causā	circum
aut	quam ob rem	contrā
aut ... aut		inter
et ... et	simul atque	or ob
nam	simul ac	trāns

Verbs

CONJ. I

CONJ. II

cōnor	moror	obtimeō	valeō
hortor	vexō	perterreō	vereor

CONJ. III

abdō	dēdō	patior	revertor
cadō	dēfendō	premō	sequor
cognōscō	ēgredior	proficīscor	statuō
cōnsequor	incendō	prōgredior	subsequor
contendō	incolō	quaerō	suscipiō
cupiō	īnsequor	recipiō	trādō

currō occīdō relinquō trahō
 CONJ. III
orior perveniō

280 525. **Translate the following words.** Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

<i>on account of</i>	<i>width</i>	<i>fear (verb)</i>	<i>leave</i>
<i>nearly</i>	<i>scout</i>	<i>worse</i>	<i>abandon</i>
	<i>cohort</i>		<i>be strong</i>
<i>keenly, sharply</i>		<i>greater, larger</i>	<i>receive, recover</i>
	<i>tribe, nation</i>		
<i>thousand</i>		<i>two by two</i>	<i>terrify, frighten</i>
<i>two</i>	<i>business</i>		
<i>opportune</i>		<i>least (adv.)</i>	<i> dwell</i>
<i>remaining</i>	<i>by a little</i>		
<i>above (adj.)</i>		<i>opinion,</i>	<i>state, citizenship</i>
<i>next</i>	<i>somewhat</i>	<i>expectation</i>	
	<i>crime</i>		
<i>grain supply</i>	<i>difficult</i>	<i>approach, entrance</i>	<i>valley</i>
	<i>equal</i>		<i>slavery</i>
<i>pace</i>		<i>trader</i>	<i>greatly</i>
<i>shout (noun)</i>	<i>move forward,</i>		<i>best of all (adv.)</i>
	<i>advance</i>	<i>magnitude, size</i>	
<i>from all sides</i>			
	<i>multitude</i>	<i>council, assembly</i>	<i>better (adv.)</i>
<i>against</i>	<i>woman</i>		<i>well (adv.)</i>
<i>around</i>	<i>desire (verb)</i>	<i>space, room</i>	<i>very much</i>
<i>three</i>			<i>much</i>
<i>further</i>	<i>give over,</i>	<i>either ... or</i>	<i>unlike</i>
	<i>surrender</i>		<i>like (adj.)</i>
<i>line of march</i>		<i>rise, arise</i>	<i>slow</i>
	<i>kill</i>		
<i>manor</i>	<i>overtake</i>	<i>suffer, allow</i>	<i>very greatly,</i>
<i>region</i>			<i>exceedingly</i>
<i>fortification</i>	<i>hasten, strive</i>	<i>press hard</i>	
<i>eagle</i>			<i>building</i>
<i>almost</i>	<i>hide</i>	<i>fall</i>	<i>mind (noun)</i>
<i>boldly</i>	<i>one</i>	<i>surrender</i>	<i>easily</i>
<i>bravely</i>	<i>first</i>		<i>easy</i>
<i>across</i>		<i>set fire to</i>	<i>recent</i>
	<i>second, favorable</i>		<i>huge, great</i>
<i>between, among</i>		<i>defend</i>	<i>bold</i>
	<i>two hundred</i>		<i>immediately</i>
<i>hither (adj.)</i>	<i>former</i>		<i>as soon as</i>

<i>so</i>	<i>inner</i>	<i>possess, hold</i>	<i>for</i>
<i>less</i>	<i>middle</i>		<i>than</i>
<i>more</i>	<i>low</i>	<i>delay (verb)</i>	<i>best (adj.)</i>
<i>most</i>	<i>outward</i>		<i>greatest</i>
<i>worst</i>		<i>nearest (adv.)</i>	<i>follow close</i>
<i>difficulty</i>	<i>three by three</i>		<i>encourage</i>
<i>hostage</i>		<i>nearer (adv.)</i>	
<i>death</i>	<i>provisions</i>		<i>annoy, ravage</i>
	<i>speed</i>	<i>better (adj.)</i>	
<i>command, power</i>	<i>ditch</i>		<i>hide</i>
		<i>well known, noble</i>	<i>follow</i>
<i>captive</i>	<i>wherefore or</i>		<i>pursue</i>
<i>or</i>	<i>therefore</i>	<i>mild, gentle</i>	
<i>and</i>			<i>both ... and</i>
<i>arrive</i>	<i>for this reason</i>	<i>swift</i>	
	<i>fear (noun)</i>	<i>eager</i>	<i>rampart</i>
<i>attempt, try</i>	<i>return</i>	<i>low (adj.)</i>	
	<i>inquire</i>	<i>slender</i>	
<i>length</i>	<i>set out</i>		
		<i>one by one</i>	
	<i>move out, disembark</i>	<i>no one</i>	
		<i>least (adv.)</i>	
		<i>little (adv.)</i>	
		<i>learn, know</i>	
		<i>drag</i>	
		<i>undertake</i>	
		<i>run</i>	
		<i>fix, decide</i>	

281 526. **Review Questions.** What is meant by comparison? In what two ways may adjectives be compared? Compare **clārus, brevis, vĕlōx**, and explain the formation of the comparative and the superlative. What are the adverbs used in comparison? Compare **brevis** by adverbs. Decline the comparative of **vĕlōx**. How are adjectives in **-er** compared? Compare **ācer, pulcher, liber**. What are possible translations for the comparative and superlative? Name the six adjectives that form the superlative in **-limus**. Translate in two ways *Nothing is brighter than the sun*. Give the rule for the ablative with comparatives. Compare **bonus, magnus, malus, multus, parvus, exterus, īferus, posterus, superus**. Decline **plūs**. Compare **citerior, interior, propior, ulterior**. Translate *That route to Italy is much shorter*. Give the rule for the expression of measure of difference. Name five words that are especially common in this construction. How are adverbs usually formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions? from adjectives of the third declension? Compare the adverbs **cārē, liberē, fortiter, audācter**. What cases of adjectives are

sometimes used as adverbs? What are the adverbs from **facilis**? **multus**? **prīmus**? **plūrimus**? **bonus**? **magnus**? **parvus**? Compare **prope**, **saepe**, **magnopere**. How are numerals classified? Give the first twenty cardinals. Decline **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, **mīlle**. How are the hundreds declined? What is meant by the partitive genitive? Give the rule for the partitive genitive. What sort of words are commonly used with this construction? What construction is used with **quīdam** and cardinal numbers excepting **mīlle**? Give the first twenty ordinals. How are they declined? How are the distributives declined? Give the rule for the expression of duration of time and extent of space. What is the difference between the ablative of time and the accusative of time? What is a deponent verb? Give the synopsis of one. What form always has a passive meaning? Conjugate **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, in the active and passive.

[Go on to Lesson LXI](#)

VIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXI-LXIX

[Lesson LXX](#)

527. Review the vocabularies of the first seventeen lessons. See [§§ 502](#), [503](#), [506](#), [507](#).

528. Review Questions. Name the tenses of the subjunctive. What time is denoted by these tenses? What are the mood signs of the present subjunctive? How may the imperfect subjunctive be formed? How do the perfect subjunctive and the future perfect indicative active differ in form? How is the pluperfect subjunctive active formed? Inflect the subjunctive active and passive of **cūrō**, **dēleō**, **vincō**, **rapiō**, **mūniō**. Inflect the 282 subjunctive tenses of **sum**; of **possum**. What are the tenses of the participles in the active? What in the passive? Give the active and passive participles of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**. Decline **regēns**. What participles do deponent verbs have? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect participle of a deponent verb and of one not deponent? Give the participles of **vereor**. How should participles usually be translated? Conjugate **volō**, **nolō**, **mālō**, **fiō**.

What is the difference between the indicative and subjunctive in their fundamental ideas? How is purpose usually expressed in English? How is it expressed in Latin? By what words is a Latin purpose clause introduced? When should **quō** be used? What is meant by sequence of tenses? Name the primary tenses of the indicative and of the subjunctive; the secondary tenses. What Latin verbs are regularly followed by substantive clauses of purpose? What construction follows **iubeō**? What construction follows verbs of *fearing*? How is consequence or result expressed in Latin? How is a result clause introduced? What words are often found in the principal clause foreshadowing the coming of a result clause? How may negative purpose be distinguished from negative result? What is meant by the subjunctive of characteristic or description? How are such clauses introduced? Explain the ablative absolute. Why is the ablative absolute of such frequent occurrence in Latin? Explain the predicate accusative. After what verbs are two accusatives commonly found? What do these accusatives become when the verb is passive?

[Go on to Lesson LXX](#)



IMPERATOR MILITES HORTATUR

283

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

The words in heavy type are used in Cæsar's "Gallic War."

LESSON IV, § 39

Nouns

dea, goddess (deity)

Diā'na, Diana

fera, a wild beast (fierce)

Lātō'na, Latona

sagit'ta, arrow

Verbs

est, he (she, it) is; **sunt**, they are

necat, he (she, it) kills, is killing, does kill

Conjunction1

et, and

Pronouns

quis, interrog. pronoun, nom. sing., *who?*

cuius (pronounced *co oi'yo os*, two syllables), interrog. pronoun, gen. sing., *whose?*

1. A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.

LESSON V, § 47

Nouns

corō'na, wreath, garland, crown

fā'bula, story (fable)

pecū'nia, money (pecuniary)

pugna, battle (pugnacious)

victō'ria, victory

Verbs

dat, he (she, it) gives

nārrat, he (she, it) tells (narrate)

Conjunction1

quia or **quod**, because

Pronoun

cui (pronounced *co oi*, one syllable), interrog. pronoun, dat. sing., *to whom? for whom?*

1. A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.

LESSON VI, § 56

Adjectives

284

bona, *good*
grāta, *pleasing*
magna, *large, great*
mala, *bad, wicked*
parva, *small, little*
pulchra, *beautiful, pretty*
sōla, *alone*

Nouns
 ancil'la, *maidservant*
 Iūlia, *Julia*
 Adverbs
cūr, *why*
nōn, *not*
 Pronouns
mea, *my*; **tua**, *thy, your* (possesives)
quid, interrog. pronoun, nom. and acc. sing., *what?*

-ne, the question sign, an enclitic (§ 16) added to the first word, which, in a question, is usually the verb, as **amat**, *he loves*, but **amat'ne?** *does he love?* **est**, *he is*; **estne?** *is he?* Of course **-ne** is not used when the sentence contains **quis**, **cūr**, or some other interrogative word.

1. An *adverb* is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, She sings *sweetly*; she is *very* talented; she began to sing *very early*.

LESSON VII, § 62

Nouns

casa, -ae, f., *cottage*
 cēna, -ae, f., *dinner*
gallī'na, -ae, f., *hen, chicken*

in'sula, ae, f., *island* (peninsula)

Adverbs

de-in'de, *then, in the next place*
ubi, *where*

Preposition

ad, *to*, with acc. to express motion toward

Pronoun

quem, interrog. pronoun, acc. sing., *whom?*

Verbs

ha'bitat, *he (she, it) lives, is living, does live* (inhabit)

laudat, *he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise* (laud)

parat, *he (she, it) prepares, is preparing, does prepare*

vocat, *he (she, it) calls, is calling, does call; invites, is inviting, does invite* (vocation)

LESSON VIII, § 69

Nouns

Italia, -ae, f., *Italy*
 Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*
tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet* (tube)
via, -ae, f., *way, road, street* (viaduct)

Adjectives

alta, *high, deep* (altitude)

clāra, *clear, bright; famous*

lāta, *wide* (latitude)

longa, *long* (longitude)

nova, *new* (novelty)

285

LESSON IX, § 77

Nouns

bellum, -ī, n., *war* (re-bel)
cōstantia, -ae, f., *firmness, constancy, steadiness*
dominus, -ī, m., *master, lord* (dominate)
equus, -ī, m., *horse* (equine)
frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain*
lēgātus, -ī, m., *lieutenant, ambassador* (legate)
Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus, Mark*

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall* (mural)
oppidānus, -ī, m., *townsman*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town*
pīlum, -ī, n., *spear* (pile driver)
servus, -ī, m., *slave, servant*
Sextus, -ī, m., *Sextus*
Verbs
cūrat, he (she, it) cares for, with acc.
properat, he (she, it) hastens

LESSON X, § 82

Nouns

amīcus, -ī, m., *friend* (amicable) **populus, -ī, m.**, *people*
Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany* **Rhēnus, -ī, m.**, *the Rhine*
patria, -ae, f., *fatherland* **vīcus, -ī, m.**, *village*

LESSON XI, § 86

Nouns

arma, armōrum, n., plur., *arms*, especially
defensive weapons **galea, -ae, f.**, *helmet*
fāma, -ae, f., *rumor; reputation, fame* **praeda, -ae, f.**, *booty, spoils* (predatory)
tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon of offense, spear*

Adjectives

dūrus, -a, -um, *hard, rough; unfeeling, cruel;*
severe, toilsome (durable) **Rōmānus, -a, -um**, *Roman*. As a noun,
Rōmānus, -ī, m., *a Roman*

LESSON XII, § 90

Nouns

filius, fili, m., *son* (filial)
fluvius, fluvī, m., *river* (fluent)
gladius, gladi, m., *sword*
(gladiator)
praesidium, praesi'dī, n.,
garrison, guard, protection
proelium, proeli, n., *battle*

Adjectives

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *bordering upon, neighboring, near to*. As
a noun, **fīnitimī, -ōrum, m.**, plur., *neighbors*
Germānus, -a, -um, *German*. As a noun, **Germānus, -ī, m.**,
a German
multus, -a, -um, *much; plur., many*

Adverb

saepe, often

286

LESSON XIII, § 95

Nouns

ager, agrī, m., *field* (acre)
cōpia, -ae, f., *plenty, abundance* (copious); plur., *troops, forces*
Cornēlius, Cornē'li, m., *Cornelius*
lōrī'ca, -ae, f., *coat of mail, corselet*

Adjectives

legiōnārius, -a, -um,¹ *legionary, belonging to the legion*. As a noun, **legiōnārii, -ōrum**, m., plur., *legionary soldiers*
liber, libera, liberum, *free* (liberty) As a noun. **liberī, -ōrum**, m., plur., *children* (lit. *the freeborn*)

1. The genitive singular masculine of adjectives in **-ius** ends in **-iī** and the vocative in **-ie**; not in **-ī**, as in nouns.

LESSON XIV, § 99

Nouns

auxilium, auxili'li, n., *help, aid* (auxiliary)
castrum, -i, n., *fort* (castle); plur., *camp* (lit. *forts*)
cibus, -i, m., *food*

Adjectives

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick*
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, *frequent*

cōsilium, cōnsi'li, n., *plan* (counsel)
diligentia, -ae, f., *diligence, industry*
magister, magistrī, m., *master, teacher*¹

miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, unfortunate* (miser)

1. Observe that **dominus**, as distinguished from **magister**, means *master* in the sense of *owner*.

LESSON XV, § 107

Nouns

carrus, -i, m., *cart, wagon*
inopia, -ae, f., *want, lack*; the opposite of **cōpia**
studium, studi, n., *zeal, eagerness* (study)

Verb

mātūrat, *he (she, it) hastens*. Cf. *properat*

-que, conjunction, *and*; an enclitic (cf. § 16) and always added to the *second* of two words to be connected, as **arma tēla'que**, *arms and weapons*.

LESSON XVII, § 117

Nouns

praemium, praemī, n., *reward, prize* (premium)
puer, puerī, m., *boy* (puerile)
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*
scūtum, -i, n., *shield* (escutcheon)
vir, virī, m., *man, hero* (virile)

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *pretty, beautiful*

Preposition

apud, *among*, with acc.

Conjunction

sed, *but*

Adjectives

armātus, -a, -um, *armed*
īnfirmus, -a, -um, *weak, feeble* (infirm)
vali'dus, -a, -um, *strong, sturdy*

Adverb

iam, *already, now*

agrī cultūra, -ae, f., *agriculture*
domicilium, **domīci lī**, n.,
dwelling place (domicile) abode
fēmina, -ae, f., *woman (female)*

Adjective

mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe, mature*

Verbs

arat, *he (she, it) plows (arable)*

dēsiderat, *he (she, it) misses,*
longs for (desire), with acc.

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*

Gallus, -i, m., *a Gaul*

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear*

numerus, -ī, m., *number (numeral)*

Adverb

quō, *whither*

Conjunction

an, *or*, introducing the second half of a double question, as *Is he a Roman or a Gaul, Estne Romanus an Gallus?*

LESSON XVIII, § 124

Nouns

lūdus, -ī, m., *school*

socius, **soci**, m., *companion, ally (social)*

Adverbs

hodiē, *to-day*

ibi, *there, in that place*

mox, *presently, soon, of the immediate future*

Adjectives

īrātus, -a, -um, *angry, furious (irate)*

laetus, -a, -um, *happy, glad (social)*

nunc, *now, the present moment*

nūper, *lately, recently, of the immediate past*

LESSON XX, § 136

Nouns

fōrma, -ae, f., *form, beauty*

poena, -ae, f., *punishment, penalty*

potentia, -ae, f., *power (potent)*

Adjectives

septem, indeclinable, *seven*

superbus, -a, -um, *proud, haughty (superb)*

288

regīna, -ae, f., *queen (regal)*

superbia, -ae, f., *pride, haughtiness*

trīstītīa, -ae, f., *sadness, sorrow*

Conjunctions

nōn solum ... sed etiam, *not only ... but also*

LESSON XXI, § 140

Nouns

sacrum, -ī, n., *sacrifice, offering, rite*

verbum, -ī, n., *word (verb)*

Verbs

sedeō, -ēre, *sit (sediment)*

volō, -āre, *fly (volatile)*

ego, personal pronoun, *I (egotism)*. Always emphatic in the nominative.

Adjectives

interfectus, -a, -um, *slain*

molestus, -a, -um, *troublesome, annoying (molest)*

perpetuus, -a, -um, *perpetual, continuous*

LESSON XXII, § 146

Nouns

disciplīna, -ae, f., training, culture, discipline **Gāius, Gāī, m., Caius, a Roman first name**
ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., ornament, jewel **Tiberius, Tibe' rī, m., Tiberius, a Roman first name**

Verb

doceō, -ēre, teach (doctrine)

Adverb

maximē, most of all, especially

Adjective

antīquus, -qua, -quum, old, ancient (antique)

LESSON XXVII, § 168

Nouns

āla, -ae, f., wing

deus, -ī, m., god (deity)

monstrum, -ī, n., omen, prodigy; monster

ōrāculum, -ī, n., oracle

Verb

vāstō, -āre, lay waste, devastate

Adjectives

commōtus, -a, -um, moved, excited

maximus, -a, -um, greatest (maximum)

saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage

Adverbs

ita, thus, in this way, as follows

tum, then, at that time

1. For the declension of **deus**, see § 468

LESSON XXVIII, § 171

Verbs

respondeō, -ēre, respond, reply

servō, -āre, save, preserve

Adjective

cārus, -a, -um, dear (cherish)

Conjunction

autem, but, moreover, now. Usually

stands second, never first

Noun

vīta, -ae, f., life (vital)

289

LESSON XXIX, § 176

Verb

superō, -āre, conquer, overcome (insuperable)

Nouns

cūra, -ae, f., care, trouble

locus, -ī, m., place, spot (location). **Locus is neuter in the plural and is declined **loca, -ōrum**, etc.**

perīculum, -ī, n., danger, peril

Adverbs

semper, always

tamen, yet, nevertheless

Prepositions

dē, with abl., down from;

concerning

per, with acc., through

Conjunction

si, if

LESSON XXX, § 182

Verbs

absum, abesse, irreg., be away, be absent, be distant, with separative abl.

discēdō, -ere, depart, go away, leave, with separative abl.

adpropinquō, -āre, *draw near, approach*
(propinquity), with dative
contineō, -ēre, *hold together, hem in, keep* (contain)

egeō, -ēre, *lack, need, be without*, with
separative abl.

interficiō, -ere, *kill*
prohibeō, -ēre, *restrain, keep from*
(prohibit)

vulnerō, -āre, *wound* (vulnerable)

Nouns

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province*

vīnum, -ī, n., *wine*

Adjective

dēfessus, -a, -um, *weary, worn out*

Adverb

longē, *far, by far, far away*

1. This verb governs the dative because the idea of *nearness to* is stronger than that of *motion to*. If the latter idea were the stronger, the word would be used with **ad** and the accusative.

LESSON XXXI, § 188

Nouns

aurum, -ī, n., *gold* (orion)

mora, -ae, f., *delay*

nāvigium, nāvī gī, n., *boat, ship*

ventus, -ī, m., *wind* (ventilate)

Verb

nāvigō, -āre, *sail* (navigate)

Adjectives

attentus, -a, -um, *attentive, careful*

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful* (dubious)

perfidus, -a, -um, *faithless, treacherous* (perfidy)

Adverb

anteā, *before, previously*

Preposition

sine, with abl., *without*

290

LESSON XXXII, § 193

Nouns

animus, -ī, m., *mind, heart; spirit, feeling*
(animate)

bracchium, bracchī, n., *forearm, arm*

porta, -ae, f., *gate* (portal)

Preposition

prō, with abl., *before; in behalf of; instead of*

Adjectives

adversus, -a, -um, *opposite; adverse, contrary*

plēnus, -a, -um, *full* (plenty)

Adverb

diū, *for a long time, long*

LESSON XXXIV, § 200

Adverbs

celeriter, *quickly* (celerity) **graviter**, *heavily, severely* (gravity)

dēnique, *finally* **subitō**, *suddenly*

Verb

reportō, -āre, -āvī, *bring back, restore; win, gain* (report)

LESSON XXXVI, § 211

dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right* (dextrous)

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, *left*
frustrā, adv., *in vain* (frustrate)

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus, *bear, carry on; wear*; **bellum gerere**, *to wage war*

occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātus, *seize, take possession of* (occupy)

postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus, *demand* (ex-postulate)

recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātus, *refuse*

stō, stāre, stetī, status, *stand*

temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus, *try, tempt, test; attempt*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, —, *keep, hold* (tenacious)

The word **ubi**, which we have used so much in the sense of *where* in asking a question, has two other uses equally important:

1. **ubi** = *when*, as a relative conjunction denoting time; as,

Ubi mōnstrum audīverunt, fūgerunt, *when they heard the monster, they fled*

2. **ubi** = *where*, as a relative conjunction denoting place; as,

Videō oppidum ubi Galba habitat, *I see the town where Galba lives*

Ubi is called a *relative conjunction* because it is equivalent to a relative pronoun. *When* in the first sentence is equivalent to *at the time at which*; and in the second, *where* is equivalent to *the place in which*.

291

LESSON XXXVII, § 217

neque or nec, conj., *neither, nor, and ... not*; **neque ... neque**, *neither ... nor*

castellum, -ī, n., *redoubt, fort*
(castle)

cotīdiē, adv., *daily*

cessō, cessāre, cessāvī, cessātus, *cease*, with the infin.

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus, *begin* (incipient), with the infin.

oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus, *storm, assail*

petō, petere, petivī or petīī, petītus, *aim at, assail, storm, attack; seek, ask* (petition)

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *place, put* (position); **castra pōnere**, *to pitch camp*

possum, posse, potuī, —, *be able, can* (potent), with the infin.

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, *forbid* (veto), with the infin.; opposite of **iubeō**, *command*

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *conquer* (in-vincible)

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, —, *live, be alive* (re-vive)

LESSON XXXIX, § 234

barbarus, -a, -um, *strange, foreign, barbarous*. As a noun,

barbarī, -ōrum, m., plur., *savages, barbarians*

dux, ducis, m., *leader* (duke). Cf. the verb **dūcō**

eques, equitis, m., *horseman, cavalryman* (equestrian)

iūdex, iūdicis, m., *judge*

lapis, lapidis, m., *stone* (lapidary)

mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier* (militia)

pedes, peditis, m., *foot soldier*
(pedestrian)

pēs, pedis, l m., *foot* (pedal)

prīnceps, prīncipis, m., *chief*
(principal)

rēx, rēgis, m., *king* (regal)

summus, -a, -um, *highest*

greatest (summit)
virtūs, virtūtis, f., *manliness, courage* (virtue)

1. Observe that *e* is *long* in the nom. sing, and *short* in the other cases.

LESSON XL, § 237

Caesar, -aris, m., *Cæsar*
captīvus, -ī, m., *captive, prisoner*
cōnsul, -is, m., *consul*
frāter, frātris, m., *brother* (fraternity)
homō, hominis, m., *man, human being*
impedīmentum, -ī, n., *hindrance* (impediment); plur.
impedīmenta, -ōrum, *baggage*

292

imperātor, imperātōris, m., *commander in chief, general* (emperor)
legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion*
māter, mātris, f., *mother* (maternal)
ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., *row, rank* (order)
pater, patris, m., *father* (paternal)
salūs, salūtis, f., *safety* (salutary)
soror, sorōris, f., *sister* (sorority)

LESSON XLI, § 239

calamitās, calamitātis, f., *loss, disaster, defeat* (calamity)
caput, capitis, n., *head* (capital)
flūmen, flūminis, n., *river* (flume)
labor, labōris, m., *labor, toil*
opus, operis, n., *work, task*
accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus, *receive, accept*
cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfirmāvī, cōfirmātus, *strengthen, establish, encourage* (confirm)

ōrātor, ōrātōris, m., *orator*
rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a stream)
tempus, temporis, n., *time* (temporal)
terror, terrōris, m., *terror, fear*
victor, victōris, m., *victor*

LESSON XLIII, § 245

animal, animālis (-ium1), n., *animal*
avis, avis (-ium), f., *bird* (aviation)
caedēs, caedīs (-ium), f., *slaughter*
calcar, calcāris (-ium), n., *spur*
cīvis, cīvis (-ium), m. and f., *citizen* (civic)
cliēns, clientis (-ium), m., *retainer, dependent* (client)
fīnis, fīnis (-ium), m., *end, limit* (final); plur., *country, territory*
hostis, hostis (-ium), m. and f., *enemy in war* (hostile).
Distinguish from **inimīcus**, which means a *personal enemy*

ignis, ignis (-ium), m., *fire* (ignite)
īnsigne, īnsignis (-ium), n., *decoration, badge* (ensign)
mare, maris (-ium2), n., *sea* (marine)
nāvis, nāvis (-ium), f., *ship* (naval);
nāvis longa, *man-of-war*
turris, turris (-ium), f., *tower* (turret)
urbs, urbis (-ium), f., *city* (suburb).
An **urbs** is larger than an **oppidum**.

1. The genitive plural ending **-ium** is written to mark the i-stems.
2. The genitive plural of **mare** is not in use.

LESSON XLIV, § 249

arbor, arboris, f., *tree* (arbor)
collis, collis (-ium), m., *hill*
dēns, dentis (-ium), m., *tooth* (dentist)
fōns, fontis (-ium), m., *fountain, spring; source*
iter, itineris, n., *march, journey, route* (itinerary)
mēnsis, mēnsis (-ium), m., *month*
moenia, -ium, n., plur., *walls, fortifications*. Cf. **mūrus**

mōns, montis (-ium), m., *mountain*;
summus mōns, *top of the mountain*
numquam, adv., *never*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge* (pontoon)
293
sanguis, sanguinis, m., *blood* (sanguinary)
summus, -a, -um, *highest, greatest* (summit)
trāns, prep, with acc., *across* (transatlantic)
vīs (vīs), gen. plur. **virium**, f. *strength, force, violence* (vim)

LESSON XLV, § 258

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, keen, eager* (acid)
brevis, breve, *short, brief*
difficilis, difficile, *difficult*
facilis, facile, facile, *easy*
fortis, forte, *brave* (fortitude)
gravis, grave, *heavy, severe, serious* (grave)

omnis, omne, *every, all* (omnibus)
pār, gen. **paris**, *equal* (par)
paucī, -ae, -a, *few, only a few* (paucity)
secundus, -a, -um, *second; favorable*, opposite of adversus
signum, -ī, n., *signal, sign, standard*
vēlōx, gen. **vēlōcis**, *swift* (velocity)

conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus, *arrange, station, place* (collocation)
dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātus, *point out, explain* (demonstrate)
mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātus, *commit, intrust* (mandate)

LESSON XLVI, § 261

adventus, -ūs, m., *approach, arrival* (advent)

ante, prep, with acc., *before* (ante-date)

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing of an army* (cornucopia);

ā dextrō cornū, *on the right wing*;

ā sinistrō cornū, *on the left wing*

equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry*

exercitus, -ūs, m., *army*

cremō, cremāre, cremāvī, cremātus, *burn* (cremate)

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus, *practice, drill, train* (exercise)

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack* (impetus); **impetum facere in**, with acc., *to make an attack on*

lacus, -ūs, dat. and abl. plur. **lacubus**, m., *lake*

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; band, force* (manual)

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor* (port)

post, prep, with acc., *behind, after* (post-mortem)

LESSON XLVII, § 270

Athēnae, -ārum, f., plur., *Athens*

Corinthus, -ī, f., *Corinth*

domus, -ūs, locative **domī**, f., *house, home*

294

propter, prep, with acc., *on account of, because of*

(dome). Cf. **domicilium**
Genāva, -ae, f., *Geneva*
Pompēii, -ōrum, m., plur., *Pompeii*, a city in
Campania. See map

rūs, rūris, in the plur. only nom. and acc. **rūra**,
n., *country* (rustic)
tergum, tergī, n., *back*; **ā tergō**, *behind, in the*
rear

vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound* (vulnerable)

committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, *intrust, commit*; **proelium committere**, *join*
battle

convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus, *call together, summon* (convoke)

timeō, timēre, timuī, —, *fear; be afraid* (timid)

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *turn, change* (convert); **terga vertere**, *to turn the backs*, hence to
retreat

LESSON XLVIII, § 276

aciēs, -ēī, f., *line of battle*

aestās, aestātis, f., *summer*

annus, -ī, m., *year* (annual)

diēs, diēī, m., *day* (diary)

fidēs, fideī, no plur., f., *faith, trust; promise,*
word; protection; in fidem venīre, to come under
the protection

fluctus, -ūs, m. *wave, billow* (fluctuate)

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter*

hōra, -ae, f., *hour*

lūx, lūcis, f., *light* (lucid); **prīma lux**,
daybreak

merīdiēs, acc. -em, abl. -ē, no plur., m.,
midday (meridian)

nox, noctis (-ium), f., *night* (nocturnal)

prīmus, -a, -um, *first* (prime)

rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter* (real);

rēs gestae, *deeds, exploits* (lit. *things*
performed); **rēs adversae**, *adversity*; **rēs**
secundae, *prosperity*

spēs, speī, f., *hope*

LESSON XLIX, § 283

amīcitia, -ae, f., *friendship* (amicable)

itaque, conj., *and so, therefore,*
accordingly

littera, -ae, f., *a letter* of the alphabet;
plur., *a letter, an epistle*

metus, metūs, m., *fear*

nihil, indeclinable, n., *nothing* (nihilist)

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus, *be pleasing to, please*, with dative. Cf. § 154

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take up, assume*

sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, *sustain*

295

LESSON L, § 288

corpus, corporis, n., *body* (corporal)

dēnsus, -a, -um, *dense*

īdem, e'adem, idem, demonstrative pronoun, *the*

ōlim, adv., *formerly, once upon a time*

pars, partis (-ium), f., *part, region, direction*

quoque, adv., *also*. Stands *after* the word

same (identity) which it emphasizes
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pronoun, *self; even, very* **sōl, sōlis**, m., *sun* (solar)
mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful, marvelous* (miracle) **vērus, -a, -um**, *true, real* (verity)
dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe, ought* (debt)
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus, *snatch from*

LESSON LI, § 294

hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative pronoun, *this* (of mine); *he, she, it*
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative pronoun *that* (yonder); *he, she, it*
invīsus, -a, -um, *hateful, detested*, with dative Cf. § 143
iste, ista, istud, demonstrative pronoun, *that* (of yours); *he, she, it*
libertās, -ātis, f., *liberty*
modus, -ī, m., *measure; manner, way, mode*
nōmen, nōminis, n., *name* (nominate)
oculus, -ī, m., *eye* (oculist)
prīstinus, -a, -um, *former, old-time* (pristine)
pūblicus, -a, -um, *public, belonging to the state*; **rēs pūblica, reī pūblīcae**, f., *the commonwealth, the state, the republic*
vestīgium, vestī' gī, n., *footprint, track; trace, vestige*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice*

LESSON LII, § 298

incolumis, -e, *unharméd*
nē ... quidem, adv., *not even*. The emphatic word stands between **nē** and **quidem**
nisi, conj., *unless, if ... not*
paene, adv., *almost* (pen-insula)
dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidī, —, *fall down* (deciduous)
dēsiliō, dēsiliire, dēsiluī, dēsultus, *leap down, dismount*
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain*
trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trādūctus, *lead across*
satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently* (satisfaction)
tantus, -a, -um, *so great*
vērō, adv., *truly, indeed, in fact*. As a conj. *but, however*, usually stands second, never first.

LESSON LIII, § 306

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle* (aquiline)
audāx, gen. **audācis**, adj., *bold, audacious*
celer, celeris, celere, *swift, quick* (celerity). Cf. **vēlōx**
explōratōr, -ōris, m., *scout, spy* (explorer)
ingēns, gen. **ingentis**, adj., *huge, vast*
mēns, mentis (-ium), f., *mind* (mental). Cf. **animus**
opportūnus, -a, -um, *opportune*
quam, adv., *than*. With the superlative **quam** gives the force of *as possible*, as **quam audācissimī virī**, *men as bold as possible*
recens, gen. **recentis**, adj., *recent*
tam, adv., *so*. Always with an adjective or adverb, while **ita** is generally used with a verb

medius, -a, -um, *middle, middle part of* (medium)

quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitus, *ask, inquire, seek* (question). Cf. **petō**

LESSON LIV, [§ 310](#)

alacer, alacris, alacre, *eager, spirited, excited* (alacrity)

celeritās, -ātis, f., *speed* (celerity)

clāmor, clāmōris, m., *shout, clamor*

lēnis, lēne, *mild, gentle* (lenient)

mulier, muli' eris, f., *woman*

multitūdō, multitūdinis, f., *multitude*

nēmō, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem** (gen. **nūllius**, abl. **nūllō**, from **nūllus**), no plur., m. and f., *no one*

cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupītus, *desire, wish* (cupidity)

nōbilis, nōbile, *well known, noble*

noctū, adv. (an old abl.), *by night* (nocturnal)

statim, adv., *immediately, at once*

subitō, adv., *suddenly*

tardus, -a, -um, *slow* (tardy)

LESSON LV, [§ 314](#)

aedificium, aedifi' cī, n., *building, dwelling* (edifice)

imperium, impe' rī, n., *command, chief power; empire*

mors, mortis (-ium), f., *death* (mortal)

abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus, *hide*

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus, *strain, struggle; hasten* (contend)

occidō, occidere, occidī, occīsus, *cut down, kill*. Cf. **necō, interficiō**

perterreō, perterrere, perterruī, perterrītus, *terrify, frighten*

recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus, *receive, recover*; **sē recipere**, *betake one's self, withdraw, retreat*

trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus, *give over, surrender, deliver* (traitor)

297

reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, rest of*. As a noun, m. and n. plur., *the rest* (relic)

scelus, sceleris, n., *crime*

servitūs, -ūtis, f., *slavery* (servitude)

vallēs, vallis (-ium), f., *valley*

LESSON LVI, [§ 318](#)

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, access; entrance*

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., *citizenship; body of citizens, state* (city)

inter, prep, with acc., *between, among* (interstate commerce)

incolō, incolere, incoluī, —, transitive, *inhabit*; intransitive, *dwell*. Cf.

habitō, vīvō

relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, *leave, abandon* (relinquish)

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, *fix, decide* (statute), usually with infin.

nam, conj., *for*

obses, obsidis, m. and f., *hostage*

paulō, adv. (abl. n. of **paulus**), *by a little, somewhat*

LESSON LVII, [§ 326](#)

aequus, -a, -um, *even, level; equal*
cohors, cohortis (-ium), f., *cohort*, a tenth part of a legion, about 360 men
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus, *run* (course)
difficultās, -ātis, f., *difficulty*
fossa, -ae, f., *ditch* (fosse)

suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus, *undertake*
trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, *drag, draw* (ex-tract)
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, *be strong*; plūrimum valēre, *to be most powerful, have great influence* (value). Cf. validus

LESSON LVIII, § 332

commeātus, -ūs, m., *provisions*
lātitudō, -inis, f., *width* (latitude)
longitudō, -inis, f., *length* (longitude)
magnitudō, -inis, f., *size, magnitude*
mercātor, mercātōris, m., *trader, merchant*
mūnitiō, -ōnis, f., *fortification* (munition)
spatium, spatī, n., *room, space, distance; time*
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, *learn*; in the perfect tenses, *know* (re-cognize)
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, *collect; compel* (cogent)
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *defend*
298
incendō, incendere, incendiī, incēnsus, *set fire to, burn* (incendiary). Cf. cremō
obtinēō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus, *possess, occupy, hold* (obtain)
pervenīō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventus, *come through, arrive*

LESSON LIX, § 337

agmen, agminis, n., *line of march, column*;
prīmum agmen, *the van*; **novissimum agmen**, *the rear*
atque, ac, conj., *and*; **atque** is used before vowels and consonants, **ac** before consonants only. Cf. **et** and **-que**
concilium, concīlī, n., *council, assembly*

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall* (decadence)
dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus, *surrender, give up*; with a reflexive pronoun, *surrender one's self, submit*, with the dative of the indirect object
premō, premere, pressī, pressus, *press hard, harass*
vexō, vexāre, vexāvī, vexātus, *annoy, ravage* (vex)

gēns, gentis (-ium), f., *race, tribe, nation* (Gentile)
negōtium, negōtī, n., *business, affair, matter* (negotiate)
regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, district*
rūmor, rūmōris, m., *rumor, report*. Cf. fāma
simul atque, conj., *as soon as*

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m., *the Helvetii*, a Gallic tribe
passus, passūs, m., *a pace*, five Roman feet;
mille passuum, *a thousand (of) paces*, a Roman mile
quā dē causā, *for this reason, for what reason*
vāllum, -ī, n., *earth-works, rampart*

LESSON LX, § 341

aut, conj., *or*; **aut ... aut**, *either ... or*
causā, abl. of **causa**, *for the sake of, because of*.
Always stands *after* the gen. which modifies it
ferē, adv., *nearly, almost*

cōnor, **cōnārī**, **cōnātus sum**, *attempt, try*

ēgredior, **ēgredī**, **ēgressus sum**, *move out, disembark*; **prōgredior**, *move forward, advance*
(egress, progress)

moror, **morārī**, **morātus sum**, *delay*

orior, **orirī**, **ortus sum**, *arise, spring; begin; be born (from)* (origin)

proficīscor, **proficīscī**, **profectus sum**, *set out*

revertor, **revertī**, **reversus sum**, *return (revert)*. The forms of this verb are usually active, and not deponent, in the perfect system. Perf. act., **revertī**

sequor, **sequī**, **secūtus sum**, *follow (sequence)*. Note the following compounds of **sequor** and the force of the different prefixes: **cōnsequor** (*follow with*), *overtake*; **īnsequor** (*follow against*), *pursue*; **subsequor** (*follow under*), *follow close after*

299

opīniō, **-ōnis**, f., *opinion, supposition, expectation*

rēs frūmentāria, **reī frūmentāriae**, f. (lit. *the grain affair*), *grain supply*

tīmor, **-ōris**, m., *fear*. Cf. **timeō**

undique, adv., *from all sides*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not to be used as such; they are inserted to show etymological meanings.

The “parentheses” are shown in square brackets [], as in the original.

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#)

A

ā or **ab**, prep. with abl. *from, by, off*. Translated *on* in **ā dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing*; **ā fronte**, *on the front or in front*; **ā dextrā**, *on the right*; **ā latere**, *on the side*; etc.

ab-dō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditus**, *hide, conceal*

ab-dūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, *lead off, lead away*

abs-cīdō, **-ere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsus** [**ab(s)**], *off, + caedō, cut*], *cut off*

ab-sum, **-esse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus**, *be away, be absent, be distant, be off*; with **ā** or **ab** and abl.,

[§ 501.32](#)

ac, conj., see **atque**

ac-cipiō, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus** [**ad, to, + capiō, take**], *receive, accept*

ācer, **ācris**, **ācre**, adj. *sharp*; figuratively, *keen, active, eager* ([§ 471](#))

altitūdō, **-inis**, f. [**altus, high**], *height*

altus, **-a**, **-um**, adj. *high, tall, deep*

Amāzonēs, **-um**, f. plur. *Amazons*, a fabled tribe of warlike women

ambō, **-ae**, **-ō**, adj. (decl. like **duo**), *both*

amīcē, adv. [**amīcus, friendly**], superl.

amīcissimē, *in a friendly manner*

amiciō, **-īre**, —, **-ictus** [**am-**, *about, + iaciō, throw*], *throw around, wrap about, clothe*

amīcītia, **-ae**, f. [**amīcus, friend**], *friendship*

amīcus, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [**amō, love**], *friendly*.

As a noun, **amīcus**, **-ī**, m. *friend*

ā-mittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, *send away; lose*

amō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *love, like, be fond of* ([§ 488](#))

acerbus, -a, -um, adj. *bitter, sour*
aciēs, -ēī, f. [**ācer**, *sharp*], *edge; line of battle*
ācritēr, adv. [**ācer**, *sharp*], compared **ācrius**,
ācerrimē, *sharply, fiercely*
ad, prep. with acc. *to, towards, near*. With the
gerund or gerundive, *to, for*
ad-aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make equal, make
level with*
ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to; move,
induce*
ad-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go to, approach, draw near,
visit*, with acc. (§ 413)
ad-ferō, ad-ferre, at-tulī, ad-lātus, *bring,
convey; report, announce; render, give* (§ 426)
ad-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [**ad**, *to*, + **faciō**, *do*],
affect, visit
adflīctātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **adflīctō**,
shatter], *shattered*
ad-flīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *dash upon, strike
upon; harass, distress*
ad-hibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [**ad**, *to*, + **habeō**, *hold*],
apply, employ, use
ad-hūc, adv. *hitherto, as yet, thus far*
aditus, -ūs, m. [**adeō**, *approach*], *approach,
access; entrance*. Cf. **adventus**
ad-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bind to, fasten*
ad-loquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, dep. verb [**ad**,
to, + **loquor**, *speak*], *speak to, address*, with acc.
ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *manage, direct*
admīrātiō, -ōnis, f. [**admīror**, *wonder at*],
admiration, astonishment
ad-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move to; apply,
employ*
ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *come near,
approach*, with dat.
ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūres, *be present; assist;
with dat.*, § 426
adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f. [part. of **adolēscō**,
grow], *a youth, young man, young person*
300
adventus, -ūs, m. [**ad**, *to*, + **veniō**, *come*],
approach, arrival (§ 466)
adversus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **advertō**, *turn to*],
turned towards, facing; contrary, adverse.
rēs adversae, *adversity*
aedificium, aedifi'cī, n. [**aedificō**, *build*],

amphitheatrum, -ī, n. *amphitheater*
amplus, -a, -um, adj. *large, ample;
honorable, noble*
an, conj. *or*, introducing the second part of a
double question
ancilla, -ae, f. *maidservant*
301
ancora, -ae, f. *anchor*
Andromeda, -ae, f. *Androm'eda*, daughter of
Cepheus and wife of Perseus
angulus, -ī, m. *angle, corner*
anim-advertō, -ere, -tī, -sus [**animus**, *mind*,
+ **advertō**, *turn to*], *turn the mind to, notice*
animal, -ālis, n. [**anima**, *breath*], *animal*
(§ 465. b)
animōsus, -a, -um, adj. *spirited*
animus, -ī, m. [**anima**, *breath*], *mind, heart;
spirit, courage, feeling*; in this sense often
plural
annus, -i, m. *year*
ante, prep. with acc. *before*
anteā, adv. [**ante**], *before, formerly*
antīquus, -a, -um, adj. [**ante**, *before*], *former,
ancient, old*
aper, aprī, m. *wild boar*
Apollō, -inis, m. *Apollo*, son of Jupiter and
Latona, brother of Diana
ap-pāreō, -ēre, -uī, — [**ad** + **pāreō**,
appear], *appear*
ap-pellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call by name,
name*. Cf. **nōminō, vocō**
Appius, -a, -um, adj. *Appian*
ap-plicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *apply, direct, turn*
apud, prep. with acc. *among; at, at the house
of*
aqua, -ae, f. *water*
aquila, -ae, f. *eagle*
āra, -ae, f. *altar*
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *think, suppose*
(§ 420. c). Cf. **exīstimō, putō**
arbor, -oris, f. *tree* (§ 247. 1. a)
Arcadia, -ae, f. *Arcadia*, a district in southern
Greece
ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, *be on fire, blaze,
burn*
arduus, -a, -um, adj. *steep*

building, edifice

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*aedēs, house, + faciō, make*], *build*

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. *sick, feeble*

aequālis, -e, adj. *equal, like*. As a noun, **aequālis, -is**, m. or f. *one of the same age*

aequus, -a, -um, adj. *even, level; equal*

Aesōpus, -ī, m. *Æsop, a writer of fables*

aestās, -ātis, f. *summer, inīta aestāte, at the beginning of summer*

aetās, -ātis, f. *age*

Aethiopia, -ae, f. *Ethiopia, a country in Africa*

Āfrica, -ae, f. *Africa*

Āfricānus, -a, -um, adj. *of Africa*. A name given to Scipio for his victories in Africa

ager, agrī, m. *field, farm, land* (§ 462. c)

agger, -eris, m. *mound*

agmen, -inis, n. [*agō, drive*], *an army on the march, column*.

prīmum agmen, *the van*

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead; do, perform*.

vītam agere, *pass life*

agricola, -ae, m. [*ager, field, + colō, cultivate*], *farmer*

agrī cultūra, -ae, f. *agriculture*

āla, -ae, f. *wing*

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj. *active, eager*. Cf. **ācer**

alacritās, -ātis, f. [*alacer, active*], *eagerness, alacrity*

alacriter, adv. [*alacer, active*], comp **alacrius**,

alacerrimē, *actively, eagerly*

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white*

alcēs, -is, f. *elk*

Alcmēna, -ae, f. *Alcme'na, the mother of Hercules*

aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron. *some one, some* (§ 487)

alius, -a, -ud (gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**), adj. *another, other*.

alius ... alius, *one ... another*.

aliī ... aliī, *some ... others* (§ 110)

Alpēs, -ium, f. plur. *the Alps*

alter, -era, -erum (gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**), adj. *the one, the other* (of two).

alter ... alter, *the one ... the other* (§ 110)

Arīcia, -ae, f. *Aricia, a town on the Appian Way, near Rome*

ariēs, -etis, m. *battering-ram* (p. 221)

arma, -ōrum, n. plur. *arms, weapons*. Cf.

tēlum

armātus, -a, -um, adj. [*armō, arm*], *armed, equipped*

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plow, till*

ars, artis, f. *art, skill*

articulus, -ī, m. *joint*

ascrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus [*ad, in addition, + scrībō, write*], *enroll, enlist*

Āsia, -ae, f. *Asia, i.e. Asia Minor*

at, conj. but. Cf. **autem, sed**

Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur. *Athens*

Atlās, -antis, m. *Atlas, a Titan who was said to hold up the sky*

at-que, ac, conj. and, and also, and what is more. **atque** may be used before either vowels or consonants, **ac** before consonants only

attentus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **attendō, direct** (the mind) *toward*], *attentive, intent on, careful*

at-tonitus, -a, -um, adj. *thunderstruck, astounded*

audācia, -ae, f. [*audāx, bold*], *boldness, audacity*

audācter, adv. [*audāx, bold*], compared

audācius, audācissimē, *boldly*

audāx, -ācis, adj. *bold, daring*

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare

audiō, -īre, -īvī or -ī, -ītus, *hear, listen to* (§§ 420.d; 491)

Augēās, -ae, m. *Auge'as, a king whose stables Hercules cleaned*

aura, -ae, f. *air, breeze*

aurātus, -a, -um, adj. [*aurum, gold*], *adorned with gold*

302

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [*aurum, gold*], *golden*

aurum, -ī, n. *gold*

aut, conj. or.

aut ... aut, *either ... or*

autem, conj., usually second, never first, in the clause, *but, moreover, however, now*. Cf.

B

ballista, -ae, f. *ballista*, an engine for hurling missiles ([p. 220](#))

balteus, -ī, m. *belt, sword belt*

barbarus, -ī, m. *barbarian, savage*

bellum, -ī, n. *war*.

bellum inferre, with dat. *make war upon*

bene, adv. [for **bonē**, from **bonus**], compared

melius, **optimē**, *well*

benignē, adv. [**benignus**, *kind*], compared

benignius, **benignissimē**, *kindly*

benignus, -a, -um, adj. *good-natured, kind*, often used with dat.

bīnī, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. *two each, two at a time* ([§ 334](#))

C

C. abbreviation for **Gāius**, Eng. *Caius*

cadō, -ere, **ce'cidī**, **cāsūrus**, *fall*

caedēs, -is, f. [**caedō**, *cut*], (*a cutting down*), *slaughter, carnage* ([§ 465. a](#))

caelum, -ī, n. *sky, heavens*

Caesar, -aris, m. *Cæsar*, the famous general, statesman, and writer

calamitās, -ātis, f. *loss, calamity, defeat, disaster*

calcar, -āris, n. *spur* ([§ 465. b](#))

Campānia, -ae, f. *Campania.*, a district of central Italy. See map

Campānus, -a, -um, adj. *of Campania*

campus, -ī, m. *plain, field*, esp. the *Campus Martius*, along the Tiber just outside the walls of Rome

canis, -is, m. and f. *dog*

canō, -ere, **ce'cinī**, —, *sing*

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**canō**, *sing*], *sing*

Capēnus, -a, -um, adj. *of Capena*, esp. the *Porta Cape'na*, the gate at Rome leading to the Appian Way

capīō, -ere, **cēpī**, **captus**, *take, seize, capture* ([§ 492](#))

Capitōlinus, -a, -um, adj. *belonging to the*

at, sed

auxilium, **auxi'li**, n. *help, aid, assistance*;
plur. *auxiliaries*

ā-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn away, turn aside*
avis, -is, f. *bird* ([§ 243. 1](#))

bis, adv. *twice*

bonus, -a, -um, adj. compared **melior**,
optimus, *good, kind* ([§ 469. a](#))

bōs, **bovis** (gen. plur. **boum** or **bovum**, dat. and abl. plur. **bōbus** or **būbus**), m. and f. *ox, cow*

bracchium, **bracchī**, n. *arm*

brevis, -e, adj. *short*

Brundisium, -ī, n. *Brundisium*, a seaport in southern Italy. See map

bullā, -ae, f. *bullā*, a locket made of small concave plates of gold fastened by a spring ([p. 212](#))

com-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [**com-**, *together*, + **premō**, *press*], *press together, grasp, seize*

con-cidō, -ere, -cidī, — [com-, intensive, + **cadō**, *fall*], *fall down*

concilium, **conci'li**, n. *meeting, council*

con-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus [com-, intensive, + **claudō**, *close*], *shut up, close; end, finish*

con-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [com-, *together*, + **currō**, *run*], *run together; rally, gather*

condiciō, -ōnis, f. [com-, *together*, + **dicō**, *talk*], *agreement, condition, terms*

con-dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pardon*

con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *hire*

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring together. sē cōnferre, betake one's self*

cōn-fertus, -a, -um, adj. *crowded, thick*

cōn-festim, adv. *immediately*

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [com-, *completely*, + **faciō**, *do*], *make, complete, accomplish, finish*

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make firm,*

Capitol, Capitoline

Capitōlium, Capitō'li, n. [**caput**, head], the Capitol, the hill at Rome on which stood the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus and the citadel

capsa, -ae, f. box for books

captīvus, -ī, m. [**capiō**, take], captive

Capua, -ae, f. Capua, a large city of Campania.

See map

caput, -itis, n. head (§ 464. 2. b)

carcer, -eris, m. prison, jail

carrus, -ī, m. cart, wagon

cārus, -a, -um, adj. dear; precious

casa, -ae, f. hut, cottage

303

castellum, -ī, n. [dim. of **castrum**, fort], redoubt, fort

castrum, -ī, n. fort. Usually in the plural, **castra**, -ōrum, a military camp.

castra pōnere, to pitch camp

cāsus, -us, m. [**cadō**, fall], chance; misfortune, loss

catapulta, -ae, f. catapult, an engine for hurling stones

catēna, -ae, f. chain

caupōna, -ae, f. inn

causa, -ae, f. cause, reason, **quā dē causā**, for this reason

cēdō, -ere, **cessī**, **cessūrus**, give way, retire

celer, -eris, -ere, adj. swift, fleet

celeritās, -ātis, f. [**celer**, swift], swiftness, speed

celeriter, adv. [**celer**, swift], compared **celerius**, **celerrimē**, swiftly

cēna, -ae, f. dinner

centum, indecl. numeral adj. hundred

centuriō, -ōnis, m. centurion, captain

Cēpheus (dissyll.), -eī (acc. **Cēphea**), m. Cepheus, a king of Ethiopia and father of Andromeda

Cerberus, -ī, m. Cerberus, the fabled three-headed dog that guarded the entrance to Hades

certāmen, -inis, n. [**certō**, struggle], struggle, contest, rivalry

certē, adv. [**certus**, sure], compared **certius**,

certissimē, surely, certainly

certus, -a, -um, adj. fixed, certain, sure.

aliquem certiōrem facere (to make some one more certain), to inform some one

establish, strengthen, affirm, assert

cōn-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, —, flow together

cōn-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, flee for refuge, flee

con-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [com-, intensive, + **iaciō**, throw], hurl

con-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus [com-, together, + **iungō**, join], join together, unite

con-iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together, + **iūrō**, swear], unite by oath, conspire

con-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together, + **locō**, place], arrange, place, station

conloquium, **conlo'quī**, n. [com-, together, + **loquor**, speak], conversation, conference

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb, endeavor, attempt, try

cōn-scendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus [com-, intensive, + **scandō**, climb], climb up, ascend.

nāvem cōnscendere, embark, go on board

305

cōn-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus [com-, together, + **scribō**, write], (write together), enroll, enlist

cōn-secrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intensive, + **sacrō**, consecrate], consecrate, devote

cōn-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [com-, intensive, + **sequor**, follow], pursue; overtake; win

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intensive, + **servō**, save], preserve, save

cōnsilium, **cōnsi'li**, n. plan, purpose, design; wisdom

cōn-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus [com-, intensive, + **sistō**, cause to stand], stand firmly, halt, take one's stand

cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus [com-, intensive, + **spiciō**, spy], look at attentively, perceive, see

cōnstantia, -ae, f. firmness, steadiness, perseverance

cōn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [com-, intensive, + **statuō**, set], establish, determine, resolve

cōn-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus [com-, together, + **stō**, stand], agree; be certain; consist of

cōnsul, -ulis, m. consul (§ 464. 2. a)

cervus, -ī, m. *stag, deer*
cessō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *delay, cease*
cibāria, -ōrum, n. plur. *food, provisions*
cibus, -ī, m. *food, victuals*
Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Cimbri*
Cimbricus, -a, -um, adj. *Cimbrian*
cīnctus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **cingō**, *surround*], *girt, surrounded*
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *gird, surround*
circiter, *adv. about*
circum, *prep, with acc. around*
circum' -dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *place around, surround, inclose*
circum' -eō, -īre, -īī, -itus, *go around*
circum-sistō, -ere, circum'stetī, —, —, —, *stand around, surround*
circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (come around), surround
citerior, -ius, adj. *in comp., superl. citimus, hither, nearer (§ 475)*
cīvilis, -e, adj. [**cīvis**], *civil*
cīvis, -is, m. and f. *citizen (§ 243. 1)*
cīvītās, -ātis, f. [**cīvis, citizen**], (*body of citizens*), *state; citizenship*
clāmor, -ōris, m. *shout, cry*
clārus, -a, -um, adj. *clear; famous, renowned; bright, shining*
classis, -is, f. *fleet*
claudō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *shut, close*
clavus, -ī, m. *stripe*
cliēns, -entis, m. *dependent, retainer, client (§ 465. a)*
Cocles, -itis, m. (*blind in one eye*), *Cocles, the surname of Horatius*
co-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnītus, *learn, know, understand. Cf. sciō (§ 420. b)*
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus [co(m)-, together, + agō, drive], (drive together), collect; compel, drive
cohors, cohortis, f. *cohort, the tenth part of a legion, about 360 men*
collis, -is, m. *hill, in summō colle, on top of the hill (§ 247. 2. a)*
collum, -ī, n. *neck*
 304
colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, *cultivate, till; honor,*

cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus [com-, intensive, + sumō, take], consume, use up
con-tendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, *strain; hasten; fight, contend, struggle*
con-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [com-, together, + teneō, hold], hold together, hem in, contain; restrain
contrā, *prep, with acc. against, contrary to*
con-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus [com-, together, + trahō, draw], draw together; of sails, shorten, furl
contrōversia, -ae, f. *dispute, quarrel*
con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [com-, together, + veniō, come], come together, meet, assemble
con-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus [com-, intensive, + vertō, turn], turn
con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, together, + vocō, call], call together
co-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, dep. verb [com-, intensive, + orior, rise], rise, break forth
cōpia, -ae, f. [com-, intensive, + ops, wealth], abundance, wealth, plenty. Plur. cōpiae, -ārum, troops
coquō, -ere, coxī, coctus, cook
Corinthus, -ī, f. *Corinth, the famous city on the Isthmus of Corinth*
Cornēlia, -ae, f. *Cornelia, daughter of Scipio and mother of the Gracchi*
Cornēlius, Cornē' lī, m. *Cornelius, a Roman name*
cornū, -ūs, n. *horn; wing of an army, ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing (§ 466)*
corōna, -ae, f. *garland, wreath; crown*
corōnātus, -a, -um, adj. *crowned*
corpus, -oris, n. *body*
cor-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [com-, intensive, + rapiō, seize], seize, grasp
cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj. *daily*
cotīdiē, adv. *daily*
crēber, -bra, -brum, adj. *thick, crowded, numerous, frequent*
crēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus, trust, believe, with dat. (§ 501.14)
cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, burn
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make; elect, appoint

worship; devote one's self to
columna, -ae, f. *column, pillar*
com- (col-, con-, cor-, co-), a prefix, *together, with,* or intensifying the meaning of the root word
coma, -ae, f. *hair*
comes, -itis, m. and f. [**com-**, *together,* + **eō,** *go*], *companion, comrade*
comitātus, -ūs, m. [**comitor,** *accompany*], *escort, company*
comitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb [**comes,** *companion*], *accompany*
com-meātus, -ūs, m. *supplies*
com-minus, adv. [**com-**, *together,* + **manus,** *hand*], *hand to hand*
com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *join together; commit, intrust.*
proelium committere, *join battle.*
sē committere with dat, *trust one's self to*
commodē, adv. [**commodus,** *fit*], compared
commodius, commodissimē, *conveniently, fitly*
commodus, -a, -um, adj. *suitable, fit*
com-mōtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **commoveō,** *move*], *aroused, moved*
com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**com-**, *intensive,* + **parō,** *prepare*], *prepare; provide, get*
com-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus [**com-**, *intensive,* + **pleō,** *fill*], *fill up*
complexus, -ūs, m. *embrace*

D

Daedalus, -ī, m. *Daed'alus,* the supposed inventor of the first flying machine
Dāvus, -ī, m. *Davus,* name of a slave
dē, prep, with abl. *down from, from; concerning, about, for* (§ 209).
quā dē causā, *for this reason, wherefore*
dea, -ae, f. *goddess* (§ 461. a)
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [**dē,** *from,* + **habeō,** *hold*], *owe, ought, should*
decem, indecl. numeral adj. *ten*
dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus [**dē,** *from,* + **cernō,** *separate*], *decide, decree*
dē-cidō, -ere, -cidī, — [**dē,** *down,* + **cadō,** *fall*], *fall down*
decimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. *tenth*

Creōn, -ontis, m. *Creon,* a king of Corinth
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, *rise, grow, increase*
 306
Crēta, -ae, f. *Crete,* a large island in the Mediterranean
Crētaeus, -a, -um, adj. *Cretan*
crūs, crūris, n. *leg*
crūstulum, -ī, n. *pastry, cake*
cubīle, -is, n. *bed*
cultūra, -ae, f. *culture, cultivation*
cum, conj. with the indic. or subjv. *when; since; although* (§ 501.46)
cum, prep, with abl. *with* (§ 209)
cupidē, adv. [**cupidus,** *desirous*], compared
cupidius, cupidissimē, *eagerly*
cupiditās, -ātis, f. [**cupidus,** *desirous*], *desire, longing*
cupiō, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -ītus, *desire, wish.* Cf.
volō
cūr, adv. *why, wherefore*
cūra, -ae, f. *care, pains; anxiety*
cūria, -ae, f. *senate house*
cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**cūra,** *care*], *care for, attend to, look after*
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, *run*
currus, -ūs, m. *chariot*
cursus, -ūs, m. *course*
custōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus [**custōs,** *guard*], *guard, watch*

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus (inv. **dīc**), *say, speak, tell.* Usually introduces indirect discourse (§ 420. a)
dictātor, -ōris, m. [**dictō,** *dictate*], *dictator,* a chief magistrate with unlimited power
diēs, -ēi or diē, m., sometimes f. in sing., *day* (§ 467)
dif-ferō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus [**dis-**, *apart,* + **ferō,** *carry*], *carry apart; differ.*
differre inter sē, *differ from each other*
dif-ficilis, -e, adj. [**dis-**, *not,* + **facilis,** *easy*], *hard, difficult* (§ 307)
difficultās, -ātis, f. [**difficilis,** *hard*], *difficulty*
diligenter, adv. [**diligēns,** *careful*], compared
diligentius, diligentissimē, *industriously,*

dēclivis, -e, adj. *sloping downward*
dē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give up, surrender, sē dēdere, surrender one's self*
dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [dē, down, + dūcō, lead], *lead down, escort*
dē-fendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus, *ward off, repel, defend*
dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [dē, down, + ferō, bring], *bring down; report, announce* (§ 426)
dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj. *tired out, weary*
dē-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [dē, from, + faciō, make], *fail, be wanting; revolt from*
dē-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus [dē, down, + figō, fasten], *fasten, fix*
dē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [dē, down, + iaciō, hurl], *hurl down; bring down, kill*
de-inde, adv. (*from thence*), *then, in the next place*
dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *delight*
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *blot out, destroy*
dēliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *weigh, deliberate, ponder*
dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [dē, from, + legō, gather], *choose, select*
Delphicus, -a, -um, adj. *Delphic*
dēmīssus, -a, -um [part. of dēmīttō, send down], *downcast, humble*
dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, out, + mōnstrō, point], *point out, show*
dēmum, adv. *at last, not till then.*
tum dēmum, *then at last*
dēnique, adv. *at last, finally.* Cf. **postrēmō**
dēns, **dentis**, m. *tooth* (§ 247. 2. a)
dēnsus, -a, -um, adj. *dense, thick*
 307
dē-pendeō, -ēre, —, — [dē, down, + pendeō, hang], *hang from, hang down*
dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, intensive, + plōrō, wail], *bewail, deplore*
dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [dē, down, + pōnō, put], *put down*
dē-scendō, -ere, -dī, -scēnsus [dē, down, + scandō, climb], *climb down, descend*
dē-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus [dē, down, + scribō, write], *write down*
dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *long for*

diligently
dīligentia, -ae, f. [dīligēns, careful], *industry, diligence*
dī-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight, struggle*
dī-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [dī-, off, + mittō, send], *send away, dismiss, disband.*
dīmīttēre animum in, *direct one's mind to, apply one's self to*
Diomēdēs, -is, m. *Dī-o-mē'dēs*, a name
dis-, **dī-**, a prefix expressing separation, *off, apart, in different directions.* Often negatives the meaning
dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus [dis-, apart, + cēdō, go], *depart from, leave, withdraw, go away*
dis-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus [dis-, apart, + cernō, sift], *separate; distinguish*
disciplīna, -ae, f. *instruction, training, discipline*
discipulus, -ī, m. [discō, learn], *pupil, disciple*
discō, -ere, didicī, —, *learn*
dis-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus [dis-, apart, + quatiō, shake], *shatter, dash to pieces*
dis-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [dis-, apart, + pōnō, put], *put here and there, arrange, station*
dis-similis, -e, adj. [dis-, apart, + similis, like], *unlike, dissimilar* (§ 307)
dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *divide, distribute*
 308
dīū, adv., compared **dīūtius**, **dīūtissimē**, *for a long time, long* (§ 477)
dō, **dare**, **dedī**, **datus**, *give.*
in fugam dare, *put to flight.*
alicui negōtium dare, *employ some one*
doceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus, *teach, show*
doctrīna, -ae, f. [doctor, teacher], *teaching, learning, wisdom*
dolor, -ōris, m. *pain, sorrow*
domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [domus, house], *of the house, domestic*
domicilium, **domici'li**, n. *dwelling; house, abode.* Cf. **domus**
domina, -ae, f. *mistress (of the house), lady* (§ 461)

dē-siliō, -īre, -uī, -sultus [dē, down, + saliō, leap], leap down
dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, away from, + spērō, hope], despair
dē-spiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus [dē, down], look down upon, despise
dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [dē, away from, + sum, be], be wanting, lack, with dat. (§ 426)
deus, -ī, m. god (§ 468)
dē-volvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus [dē, down, + volvō, roll], roll down
dē-vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē, down, + vorō, swallow], devour
dexter, -tra, -trum (-tera, -terum), adj. to the right, right.
ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing
Diāna, -ae, f. Diana, goddess of the moon and twin sister of Apollo

E

ē or **ex**, prep, with abl. out of, from, off, of (§ 209)
eburneus, -a, -um, adj. of ivory
ecce, adv. see! behold! there! here!
ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [ē, out, + dūcō, lead], lead out, draw out
ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ex, thoroughly, + faciō, do], work out; make, cause
ef-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [ex, from, + fugiō, flee], escape
egeō, -ēre, -uī, —, be in need of, lack, with abl. (§ 501.32)
ego, pers. pron. I; plur. nōs, we (§ 480)
ē-gredior, -ī, ēgressus sum, dep. verb [ē, out of, + gradior, go], go out, go forth.
ē nāvī ēgredī, disembark
ē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [ē, forth, + iaciō, hurl], hurl forth, expel
elementum, -ī, n., in plur. first principles, rudiments
elephantus, -ī, m. elephant
Ēlis, Ēlidis, f. E'lis, a district of southern Greece
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēemptus, buy, purchase
enim, conj., never standing first, for, in fact, indeed. Cf. nam
Ennius, Ennī, m. Ennius, the father of Roman poetry, born 239 B.C.

dominus, -ī, m. master (of the house), owner, ruler (§ 462)
domus, -ūs, f. house, home.
domī, locative, at home (§ 468)
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, sleep
dracō, -ōnis, m. serpent, dragon
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hesitate
dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo, two], (moving two ways), doubtful, dubious
du-centī, -ae, -a, numeral adj. two hundred
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus (imv. dūc), lead, conduct
dum, conj. while, as long as
duo, duae, duo, numeral adj. two (§ 479)
duo-decim, indecl. numeral adj. twelve
dūrus, -a, -um, adj. hard, tough; harsh, pitiless, bitter
dux, ducis, m. and f. [cf. dūcō, lead], leader, commander

Etrūscī, -ōrum, m. the Etruscans, the people of Etruria. See map of Italy
Eurōpa, -ae, f. Europe
Eurystheus, -ī, m. Eurys'theus, a king of Tiryns, a city in southern Greece
ē-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus [ē, out, + vādō, go], go forth, escape
ex, see ē
exanimātus, -a, -um [part. of exanimō, put out of breath (anima)], adj. out of breath, tired; lifeless
ex-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ex, out, + capiō, take], welcome, receive
exemplum, -ī, n. example, model
ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [ex, out, + eō, go], go out, go forth (§ 413)
ex-erceō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus [ex, out, + arceō, shut], (shut out), employ, train, exercise, use
exercitus, -us, m. [exerceō, train], army
ex-īstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex, out, + aestimō, reckon], estimate; think, judge (§ 420. c). Cf. arbitror, putō
ex-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, dep. verb [ex, forth, + orior, rise], come forth, rise
expeditus, -a, -um, adj. without baggage
ex-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [ex, out, + pellō,

eō, ire, iī (ivī), itūrus, go (§ 499)

eō, adv. *to that place, thither*

Ēpīrus, -ī, f. *Epi'rus*, a district in the north of Greece

eques, -itis, m. [**equus**, *horse*], *horseman, cavalryman*

equitātus, -ūs, m. [**equitō**, *ride*], *cavalry*

equus, -ī, m. *horse*

ē-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus [ē, *out*, + **regō**, *make straight*], *raise up*

ē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [ē, *out of*, + **ripiō**, *seize*], *seize, rescue*

ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [ē, *forth*, + **rumpō**, *break*], *burst forth*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. *sally*

309

Erymanthius, -a, -um, adj. *Erymanthian, of Erymanthus*, a district in southern Greece

et, conj. *and, also*.

et ... et, *both ... and*. Cf. **atque, ac, -que**

etiam, adv. (rarely conj.) [**et**, *also*, + **iam**, *now*], *yet, still; also, besides*. Cf. **quoque**.

nōn solum ... sed etiam, *not only ... but also*

F

fābula, -ae, f. *story, tale, fable*

facile, adv. [**facilis**, *easy*], compared **facilius**,

facillimē, *easily* (§ 322)

facilis, -e, adj. [cf. **faciō**, *make*], *easy, without difficulty* (§ 307)

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus (imv. **fac**), *make, do; cause, bring about*.

impetum facere in, *make an attack upon*.

proelium facere, *fight a battle*.

iter facere, *make a march or journey*.

aliquem certiōrem facere, *inform some one*.

facere verba prō, *speak in behalf of*.

Passive **fiō, fierī, factus sum**, *be done, happen*.

certiōr fierī, *be informed*

fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus, *trip, betray, deceive*

fāma, -ae, f. *report, rumor; renown, fame, reputation*

310

famēs, -is (abl. **famē**), f. *hunger*

familia, -ae, f. *servants, slaves; household, family*

fascēs, -ium (plur. of **fascis**), f. *fasces* (p. 225)

fastīgium, fastī gī, n. *top; slope, descent*

drive], drive out

ex-piō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ex**, *intensive*, + **pīō**, *atone for*], *make amends for, atone for*

explōrātor, -ōris, m. [**explōrō**, *investigate*], *spy, scout*

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *examine, explore*

ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ex**, *out*, + **pugnō**, *fight*], *take by storm, capture*

exsilium, exsī lī, n. [**exsul**, *exile*], *banishment, exile*

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ex**, *out*, + **spectō**, *look*], *expect, wait*

ex-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus [**ex**, *out*, + **struō**, *build*], *build up, erect*

exterus, -a, -um, adj., compared **exterior**,

extrēmus or **extimus**, *outside, outer* (§ 312)

extrā, prep. with acc. *beyond, outside of*

ex-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus [**ex**, *out*, + **trahō**, *drag*], *drag out, pull forth*

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of **exterus**, *utmost, farthest* (§ 312)

fiō, fierī, factus sum, used as passive of **faciō**. See **faciō** (§ 500)

flamma, -ae, f. *fire, flame*

flōs, flōris, m. *flower*

fluctus, -ūs, m. [of. **fluō**, *flow*], *flood, wave, billow*

flūmen, -inis, n. [cf. **fluō**, *flow*], *river* (§ 464. 2. b)

fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus, *flow*

fluvius, fluvī, m. [cf. **fluō**, *flow*], *river*

fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus, *dig*

fōns, fontis, m. *fountain* (§ 247. 2. a)

fōrma, -ae, f. *form, shape, appearance; beauty*

Formiae, -ārum, f. *Formiae*, a town of Latium on the Appian Way. See map

forte, adv. [abl. of **fors**, *chance*], *by chance*

fortis, -e, adj. *strong; fearless, brave*

fortiter, adv. [**fortis**, *strong*], compared

fortius, fortissimē, *strongly; bravely*

fortūna, -ae, f. [**fors**, *chance*], *chance, fate, fortune*

fātum, -ī, n. *fate, destiny*
faucēs, -ium, f. plur. *jaws, throat*
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *be favorable to, favor,*
 with dat. (§ 501.14)
fēlix, -īcis, adj. *happy, lucky*
fēmina, -ae, f. *woman.* Cf. **mulier**
fera, -ae, f. [**ferus, wild**], *wild beast*
ferāx, -ācis, adj. *fertile*
ferē, adv. *about, nearly, almost*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear.
graviter or molestē ferre, *be annoyed* (§ 498)
ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [**ferrum, iron**], *made of iron*
fidēlis, -e, adj. [**fidēs, trust**], *faithful, true*
fidēs, fideī or fidē, trust, faith; promise, word; protection.
in fidem venīre, *come under the protection.*
in fidē manēre, *remain loyal*
filia, -ae (dat. and abl. plur. **filiābus**), *f. daughter*
 (§ 461. a)
filius, fili (voc. sing. **fili**), *m. son*
finis, -is, m. *boundary, limit, end; in plur. territory, country* (§ 243.1)
finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [**finis, boundary**], *adjoining, neighboring.* Plur. **finitimī, -ōrum, m.** *neighbors*

G

Gaius, Gāi, m. *Gaius, a Roman name, abbreviated C., English form Caius*
Galba, -ae, m. *Galba, a Roman name*
galea, -ae, f. *helmet*
Gallia, -ae, f. *Gaul, the country comprising what is now Holland, Belgium, Switzerland, and France*
Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. *Gallic*
gallīna, -ae, f. *hen, chicken*
Gallus, -ī, m. *a Gaul*
gaudium, gaudī, n. *joy*
Genāva, -ae, f. *Geneva, a city in Switzerland*
gēns, gentis, f. [cf. **gignō, beget**], *race, family; people, nation, tribe*
genus, -eris, n. *kind, variety*
Germānia, -ae, f. *Germany*

forum, -ī, n. *market place, esp. the Forum Rōmānum, where the life of Rome centered*
Forum Appī, Forum of Appius, *a town in Latium on the Appian Way*
fossa, -ae, f. [cf. **fodiō, dig**], *ditch*
fragor, -ōris, m. [cf. **frangō, break**], *crash, noise*
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, break
frāter, -tris, m. *brother*
fremitus, -ūs, m. *loud noise*
frequentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, attend
frētus, -a, -um, adj. *supported, trusting.* Usually with abl. of means
frōns, frontis, f. *front, ā fronte, in front*
frūctus, -ūs, m. *fruit*
frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj. *pertaining to grain.*
rēs frūmentāria, grain supplies
frūmentum, -ī, n. *grain*
frūstrā, adv. *in vain, vainly*
fuga, -ae, f. [cf. **fugiō, flee**], *flight.*
in fugam dare, put to flight
 311
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee, run; avoid, shun
fūmō, -are, —, —, smoke
fūnis, -is, m. *rope*
furor, -ōris, m. [**furō, rage**], *madness.*
in furōrem incīdere, go mad

gladiātōrius, -a, -um, adj. *gladiatorial*
gladius, gladī, m. *sword*
glōria, -ae, f. *glory, fame*
Gracchus, -ī, m. *Gracchus, name of a famous Roman family*
gracilis, -e, adj. *slender* (§ 307)
Graeca, -ōrum, n. plur. *Greek writings, Greek literature*
Graecē, adv. *in Greek*
Graecia, -ae, f. *Greece*
grammaticus, -ī, m. *grammarian*
grātia, -ae, f. *thanks, gratitude*
grātus, -a, -um, adj. *acceptable, pleasing.* Often with dat. (§ 501.16)
gravis, -ē, adj. *heavy; disagreeable; serious, dangerous; earnest, weighty*

Germānus, -ī, m. *a German*
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *carry, wear; wage.*
bellum gerere, *wage war.*
rēs gestae, *exploits.*
bene gerere, *carry on successfully*

H

habēna, -ae, f. *halter, rein.*
habēō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *have, hold; regard, consider, deem*
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **habēō,** *have*], *dwell, abide, inhabit.* Cf. **incolō, vīvō**
hāc-tenus, *adv. thus far*
Helvētī, -ōrum, m. *the Helvetii, a Gallic tribe*
Herculēs, -is, m. *Hercules, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, and god of strength*
Hesperidēs, -um, f. *the Hesperides, daughters of Hesperus, who kept the garden of the golden apples*
hic, haec, hoc, *demonstrative adj. and pron. this (of mine); as pers. pron. he, she, it (§ 481)*
hic, *adv. here*
hiems, -emis, f. *winter*
hīnc, adv. [**hic,** *here*], *from here, hence*
Hippolytē, -ēs, f. *Hippolyte, queen of the Amazons*

I

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl*
iam, *adv. now, already.*
nec iam, *and no longer*
Iāniculum, -ī, n. *the Janiculum, one of the hills of Rome*
iānuā, -ae, f. *door*
ibi, *adv. there, in that place*
Īcarus, -ī, m. *Ic'arus, the son of Dædalus*
ictus, -ūs, m. [cf. **īcō,** *strike*], *blow*
īdem, e'adem, idem, *demonstrative pron. [is + dem], same (§ 481)*
idōneus, -a, -um, adj. *suitable, fit*
igitur, *conj., seldom the first word, therefore, then. Cf. itaque*
ignis, -is, m. *fire (§§ 243.1; 247.2.a; 465.1)*
ignōtus, -a, -um, adj. [**in-, not, + (g)notus,** *known*], *unknown, strange*

graviter, adv. [**gravis,** *heavy*], *compared*
gravius, gravissimē, *heavily; greatly, seriously.*
graviter ferre, *bear ill, take to heart*
gubernātor, -ōris, m. [**gubernō,** *pilot*], *pilot*

ho-diē, adv. [modified form of **hōc diē,** *on this day*], *to-day*

homō, -inis, m. and f. *(human being), man, person*

honestus, -a, -um, adv. [**honor, honor**], *respected, honorable*
312

honor, -ōris, m. *honor*

hōra, -ae, f. *hour*

Horātius, Horā'tī, m. *Horatius, a Roman name*

horribilis, -e, adj. *terrible, horrible*

hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, *dep. verb. urge, incite, exhort, encourage (§ 493)*

hortus, -ī, m. *garden*

hospitium, hospī'tī, n. [**hospes, host**], *hospitality*

hostis, -is, m. and f. *enemy, foe (§ 465. a)*

humilis, -e, adj. *low, humble (§ 307)*

Hydra, -ae, f. *the Hydra, a mythical water snake slain by Hercules*

in-gredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [**in, in, + gradior, walk**], *advance, enter*

inimīcus, -a, -um, adj. [**in-, not, + amīcus, friendly**], *hostile.* As a noun, **inimīcus, -ī, m.** *enemy, foe.* Cf. **hostis**

initium, ini'tī, entrance, beginning

initus, -a, -um, *part. of ineō.*

initā aestāte, *at the beginning of summer*

iniūria, -ae, f. [**in, against, + iūs, law**], *injustice, wrong, injury.*

alicui iniūriās īferre, *inflict wrongs upon some one*

inopia, -ae, f. [**inops, needy**], *want, need, lack*

in-opīnāns, -antis, adj. [**in-, not, + opīnāns, thinking**], *not expecting, taken by surprise*

inquit, *said he, said she.* Regularly inserted

ille, illa, illud, demonstrative adj. and pron. *that* (yonder); as pers. pron. *he, she, it* (§ 481)
illīc, adv. [cf. **ille**], *yonder, there*
im-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [**in**, *against*, + **mittō**, *send*], *send against; let in*
immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**in**, *upon*, + **mola**, *meal*], *sprinkle with sacrificial meal; offer, sacrifice*
im-mortālis, -e, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **mortalis**, *mortal*], *immortal*
im-mortālitās, -ātis, f. [**immortālis**, *immortal*], *immortality*
im-parātus, -a, -um, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **parātus**, *prepared*], *unprepared*
impedimentum, -ī, n. [**impediō**, *hinder*], *hindrance; in plur. baggage*
impeditus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **impediō**, *hinder*], *hindered, burdened*
im-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [**in**, *against*, + **pellō**, *strike*], *strike against; impel, drive, propel*
imperātor, -ōris, m. [**imperō**, *command*], *general*
imperium, impe' rī, n. [**imperō**, *command*], *command, order; realm, empire; power, authority*
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *command, order*. Usually with dat. and an object clause of purpose (§ 501.41). With acc. object, *levy, impose*
impetus, -ūs, m. *attack, impetum facere in*, *make an attack upon*
im-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus [**in**, *upon*, + **pōnō**, *place*], *place upon; impose, assign*
in, prep, with acc. *into, to, against, at, upon, towards*; with abl. *in, on*.
in reliquum tempus, *for the future*
in-, inseparable prefix. With nouns and adjectives often with a negative force, like English *un-, in-*
in-cautus, -a, -um, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **cautus**, *careful*], *off one's guard*
313
incendium, incendiī, n. *flame, fire*. Cf. **ignis, flamma**
in-cendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus, *set fire to, burn*
in-cidō, -ere, -cidī, —, [**in**, *in, on*, + **cadō**, *fall*], *fall in, fall on; happen*.
in furōrem incidere, *go mad*
in-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [**in**, *on*, + **capiō**,

in a direct quotation
in-rigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *irrigate, water*
in-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus [**in**, *into*, + **rumpō**, *break*], *burst in, break in*
in-ruō, -ere, -ruī, — [**in**, *in*, + **ruō**, *rush*], *rush in*
in-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [**in**, *on*, + **sequor**, *follow*], *follow on, pursue*
in-signē, -is, n. *badge, decoration* (§ 465. b)
in-signis, -e, adj. *remarkable, noted*
in-stāns, -antis, adj. [part. of **insto**, *be at hand*], *present, immediate*
in-stō, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus [**in**, *upon*, + **stō**, *stand*], *stand upon; be at hand; pursue, press on*
instrūmentum, -ī, n. *instrument*
in-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus [**in**, *on*, + **struō**, *build*], *draw up*
314
insula, -ae, f. *island*
integer, -gra, -grum, *untouched, whole; fresh, new*
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [**inter**, *between*, + **legō**, *choose*], *perceive, understand* (§ 420. d)
intentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *aim; threaten*
inter, prep. with acc. *between, among; during, while* (§ 340)
interfectus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **inter-ficiō**, *kill*], *slain, dead*
inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [**inter**, *between*, + **faciō**, *make*], *put out of the way, kill*. Cf. **necō, occidō, trucidō**
interim, adv. *meanwhile*
interior, -ius, adj. *interior, inner* (§ 315)
inter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *leave off, suspend*
interpretes, -etis, m. and f. *interpreter*
inter-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *question*
inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [**inter**, *between*, + **sum**, *be*], *be present, take part in*, with dat. (§ 501.15)
inter-vāllum, -ī, n. *interval, distance*
intrā, adv. and prep. with acc. *within, in*
intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *go into, enter*
in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [**in**, *upon*,

take], begin

in-cognitus, -a, -um, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **cognitus**, *known*], *unknown*

in-colō, -ere, -uī, —, [**in**, *in*, + **colō**, *dwell*], *inhabit; live*

incolumis, -e, adj. *sound, safe, uninjured, unharmed*

in-crēdibilis, -e, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **crēdibilis**, *to be believed*], *incredible*

inde, *from that place, thence*

induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *put on*

indūtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **induō**, *put on*], *clothed*

in-eō, -īre, -ī, -itus [**in**, *into*, + **eō**, *go*], *go into; enter upon, begin, with acc.* (§ 413)

in-fāns, -fantis, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + ***fāns**, *speaking*], *not speaking*. As a noun, m. and f. *infant*

in-fēlix, -īcis, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **fēlix**, *happy*], *unhappy, unlucky*

infēsus, -a, -um, adj. *hostile*

in'-ferō, infer're, in'tulī, inlā'tus [**in**, *against*, + **ferō**, *bear*], *bring against or upon, inflict, with acc. and dat.* (§ 501.15).

bellum inferre, with dat., *make war upon*

inferus, -a, -um, adj. *low, below* (§ 312).

in-fīnītus, -a, -um, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **fīnītus**, *bounded*], *boundless, endless*

in-firmus, -a, -um, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **firmus**, *strong*], *weak, infirm*

ingenium, inge'ni, n. *talent, ability*

ingēns, -entis, adj. *vast, huge, enormous, large*. Cf. **magnus**

L

L., abbreviation for **Lūcius**

labefactus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **labefaciō**, *cause to shake*], *shaken, weakened, ready to fall*

Labiēnus, -ī, m. *La-bi-e'nus*, one of Cæsar's lieutenants

labor, -ōris, m. *labor, toil*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**labor**, *labor*], *labor; suffer, be hard pressed*

lacrima, -ae, f. *tear*

lacus, -ūs (dat. and abl. plur. **lacubus**), m. *lake*

+**veniō**, *come*], *find*

invisus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **invideō**, *envy*], *hated, detested*

Iolāus, -ī, m. *I-o-lā'us*, a friend of Hercules
ipse, -a, -um, intensive pron. *that very, this very; self, himself, herself, itself*, (§ 481)

īra, -ae, f. *wrath, anger*

īrātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **īrāscor**, *be angry*], *angered, enraged*

is, ea, id, demonstrative adj. and pron. *this, that; he, she, it* (§ 481)

iste, -a, -ud, demonstrative adj. and pron. *that* (of yours), *he, she, it* (§ 481)

ita, -e, adv. *so, thus*. Cf. **sīc** and **tam**

Italia, -ae, f. *Italy*

ita-que, conj. *and so, therefore*

item, adv. *also*

iter, itineris, n. *journey, march, route; way, passage* (§§ 247.1.a; 468).

iter dare, *give a right of way, allow to pass.*

iter facere, *march* (see p. 159)

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *order, command.*

Usually with the infin. and subj. acc. (§ 213)

iūdex, -icis, m. and f. *judge* (§ 464. 1)

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**iūdex**, *judge*], *judge, decide* (§ 420. c)

Iūlia, -ae, *Julia*, a Roman name

Iūlius, Iūlī, m. *Julius*, a Roman name

iungō, -ēre, iūnxī, iūctus, *join; yoke, harness*

Iūnō, -ōnis, f. *Juno*, the queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter

Iuppiter, Iovis, m. *Jupiter*, the supreme god

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *swear, take an oath*

iussus, -a, -um, part. of **iubeō**, *ordered*

Lentulus, -i, m. *Lentulus*, a Roman family name

leō, -ōnis, m. *lion*

Lernaeus, -a, -um, adj. *Lernæan*, of Lerna, in southern Greece

Lesbia, -ae, f. *Lesbia*, a girl's name

levis, -e, adj. *light*

lēx, lēgis, f. *measure, law*

libenter, adv. [**libēns**, *willing*], compared

libentius, libentissimē, *willingly, gladly*

315

laetē, adv. [**laetus**, *glad*], compared **laetius**,
laetissimē, *gladly*
laetitia, -ae, f. [**laetus**, *glad*], *joy*
laetus, -a, -um, adj. *glad, joyful*
lapis, -idis, m. *stone* (§§ 247.2.a; 464.1)
Lār, **Laris**, m.; plur. **Larēs**, -um (rarely -ium),
the Lares or household, gods
lātē, adv. [**lātus**, *wide*], compared **lātius**,
lātissimē, *widely*
Latinē, adv. *in Latin*
Latīnē loquī, *to speak Latin*
lātitudō, -inis, f. [**lātus**, *wide*], *width*
Lātōna, -ae, f. *Latona*, mother of Apollo and
Diana
latus, -a, -um, adj. *wide*
lātus, -eris, n. *side, flank*
ab utrōque latere, *on each side*
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**laus**, *praise*], *praise*
laurea, -ae, f. *laurel*
laureātus, -a, -um, adj. *crowned with laurel*
laus, **laudis**, f. *praise*
lectulus, -ī, m. *couch, bed*
lēgātus, -ī, m. *ambassador; lieutenant*
legiō, -ōnis, f. [cf. **legō**, *gather*], (*body of*
soldiers), *legion*, about 3600 men (§ 464.2.a)
legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. *legionary*. Plur.
legiōnariī, -ōrum, m. *the soldiers of the legion*
legō, -ere, **lēgī**, **lēctus**, *read*
lēnis, -e, adj. *gentle, smooth, mild*
lēniter, adv. [**lēnis**, *gentle*], compared **lēnius**,
lēnissimē, *gently*

M

M., abbreviation for **Mārcus**
magicus, -a, -um, adj. *magic*
magis, adv. in comp. degree [**magnum**, *great*],
more, in a higher degree (§ 323)
316
magister, -trī, m. *master, commander; teacher*
magistrātus, -ūs, m. [**magister**, *master*],
magistracy; magistrate
magnitūdō, -inis, f. [**magnum**, *great*], *greatness*,
size
magnopere, adv. [abl. of **magnum opus**],
compared **magis**, **maximē**, *greatly, exceedingly*
(§ 323)

liber, -era, -erum, adj. *free* (§ 469.b)
liberī, -ōrum, m. [**liber**, *free*], *children*
liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**liber**, *free*], *set free*,
release, liberate
libertās, -ātis, f. [**liber**, *free*], *freedom, liberty*
lictor, -ōris, m. *lictor* (p. 225)
limus, -ī, m. *mud*
littera, -ae, f. *a letter of the alphabet; in plur.*
a letter, epistle
litus, -oris, n. *seashore, beach*
locus, -ī, m. (plur. **locī** and **loca**, m. and n.),
place, spot
longē, adv. [**longus**, *long*], comp. **longius**,
longissimē, *a long way off; by far*
longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [**longus**, *long*],
distant, remote
longitūdō, -inis, f. [**longus**, *long*], *length*
longus, -a, -um, adj. *long*
loquor, **loqui**, **locūtus sum**, dep. verb, *talk*,
speak
lōrica, -ae, f. [**lōrum**, *thong*], *coat of mail*,
corselet
lūdō, -ere, **lūsī**, **lūsus**, *play*
lūdus, -ī, m. *play; school*, the elementary
grades. Cf. **schola**
lūna, -ae, f. *moon*
lūx, **lūcis**, f. (no gen. plur.), *light*
prīma lūx, *daybreak*
Lȳdia, -ae, f. *Lydia*, a girl's name

mīles, -itis, m. *soldier* (§ 464.1)
mīlitāris, -e, adj. [**mīles**, *soldier*], *military*.
rēs mīlitāris, *science of war*
mīlitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**mīles**, *soldier*], *serve*
as a soldier
mīlle, plur. **mīlia**, -ium, numeral adj. and
subst. *thousand* (§ 479)
minimē, adv. in superl. degree, compared
parum, **minus**, **minimē**, *least, very little; by*
no means (§ 323)

317

minimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree,
compared **parvus**, **minor**, **minimus**, *least*,

magnus, -a, -um, adj., compared **maior**, **maximus**, *great, large; strong, loud* (§ 311)
maior, maius, -ōris, adj., comp. of **magnus**, *greater, larger* (§ 311)
maiōrēs, -um, m. plur. of **maior**, *ancestors*
mālō, mälle, māluī, — [**magis**, *more*, + **volō**, *wish*], *wish more, prefer* (§ 497)
malus, -a, -um, adj., compared **peior, pessimus**, *bad, evil* (§ 311)
mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**manus**, *hand*, + **dō**, *put*], (*put in hand*), *intrust; order, command*
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *stay, remain, abide*
Mānlius, Mānlī, m. *Manlius*, a Roman name
mānsuētus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **mānsuēscō**, *tame*], *tamed*
manus, -ūs, f. *hand; force, band*
Mārcus, -ī, m. *Marcus, Mark*, a Roman first name
mare, -is, n. (no gen. plur.), *sea*
mare tenēre, *be out to sea*
margō, -inis, m. *edge, border*
marītus, -ī, m. *husband*
Marius, Marī, m. *Marius*, a Roman name, esp. C. *Marius*, the general
Mārtius, -a, -um, adj. *of Mars*, esp. the *Campus Martius*
māter, -tris, f. *mother*
mātrimōnium, mātrimō´nī, n. *marriage*
in mātrimōnium dūcere, *marry*
mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten*. Cf. **contendō, properō**
mātūrus, -a, -um, adj. *ripe, mature*
maximē, adv. in superl. degree [**maximus**, *greatest*], compared **magnopere, magis, maximē**, *especially, very much* (§ 323)
maximus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of **magnus**, *greatest, extreme* (§ 311)
medius, -a, -um, adj. *middle part; middle, intervening*
melior, -ius, -ōris, adj., comp. of **bonus**, *better* (§ 311)
melius, adv. in comp. degree, compared **bene, melius, optimē**, *better* (§ 323)
memoria, -ae, f. [**memor**, *mindful*], *memory*
memoriā tenēre, *remember*

smallest (§ 311)
minor, minus, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, compared **parvus, minor, minimus**, *smaller, less* (§ 311)
Mīnōs, -ōis, m. *Minos*, a king of Crete
minus, adv. in comp. degree, compared **parum, minus, minimē**, *less* (§ 323)
Minyae, -ārum, m. *the Minyae*, a people of Greece
mīrābilis, -e, adj. [**mīror**, *wonder at*], *wonderful, marvelous*
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb [**mīrus**, *wonderful*], *wonder, marvel, admire*
mīrus, -a, -um, adj. *wonderful*
Mīsēnum, -ī, *Mise´num*, a promontory and harbor on the coast of Campania. See map
miser, -era, -erum, adj. *wretched, unhappy, miserable*
missus, -a, -um, part. of **mittō**, *sent*
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *send*
modicus, -a, -um [**modus**, *measure*], *modest, ordinary*
modo, adv. [abl. of **modus**, *measure*, with shortened **o**], *only, merely, just now*
modo ... modo, *now ... now, sometimes ... sometimes*
modus, -ī, m. *measure; manner, way; kind*
moenia, -ium, n. plur. [cf. **mūniō**, *fortify*], *walls, ramparts*
molestē, adv. [**molestus**, *troublesome*], compared **molestius, molestissimē**, *annoyingly*
molestē ferre, *to be annoyed*
molestus, -a, -um, *troublesome, annoying, unpleasant* (§ 501.16)
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *remind, advise, warn* (§ 489)
mōns, montis, m. *mountain* (§ 247. 2. a)
mōnstrum, -ī, n. *monster*
mora, -ae, f. *delay*
moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb [**mora**, *delay*], *delay, linger; impede*
mors, mortis, f. [cf. **morior**, *die*], *death*
mōs, mōris, m. *custom, habit*
mōtus, -ūs, m. [cf. **moveō**, *move*], *motion, movement*

mēns, mentis, f. *mind*. Cf. **animus**
mēnsis, -is, m. *month* (§ 247. 2. a)
mercātor, -ōris, m. [**mercōr**, *trade*], *trader*,
merchant
merīdiānus, -a, -um, adj. [**merīdiēs**, *noon*], *of*
midday
merīdiēs, — (acc. **-em**, abl. **-ē**), m. [**medius**,
mid, + **diēs**, *day*], *noon*
metus, -ūs, m. *fear, dread*
meus, -a, -um, possessive adj. and pron. *my, mine*
 (§ 98)

N

nam, conj. *for*. Cf. **enim**
nam-que, conj., a strengthened **nam**, introducing
 a reason or explanation, *for, and in fact; seeing*
that
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tell, relate*
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, dep. verb, *be born,*
spring from
nātūra, -ae, f. *nature*
nātus, part. of **nāscor**
nauta, -ae, m. [for **nāvita**, from **nāvis**, *ship*],
sailor
 318
nāvālis, -e, adj. [**nāvis**, *ship*], *naval*
nāvigium, nāvī gī, n. *ship, boat*
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nāvis**, *ship*, + **agō**,
drive], *sail, cruise*
nāvis, -is (abl. **-ī** or **-e**), f. *ship* (§ 243. 1).
nāvem cōnsendere, *embark, go on board*.
nāvem solvere, *set sail*.
nāvis longa, *man-of-war*
nē, conj. and adv. *in order that not, that* (with
 verbs of fearing), *lest; not*.
nē ... quidem, *not even*
-ne, interrog. adv., enclitic (see §§ 16, 210). Cf.
nōnne and **num**
nec or **neque**, conj. [**nē**, *not*, + **que**, *and*], *and not,*
nor.
nec ... nec or **neque ... neque**, *neither ... nor*
necessārius, -a, -um, adj. *needful, necessary*
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **nex**, *death*], *kill*. Cf.
interficiō, occīdō, trucīdō

terrae mōtus, *earthquake*
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move*
mox, adv. *soon, presently*
mulier, -eris, f. *woman*
multitūdō, -inis, f. [**multus**, *much*], *multitude*
multum (multō), adv. [**multus**, *much*],
 compared **plūs, plūrimum**, *much* (§ 477)
multus, -a, -um, adj., compared **plūs,**
plūrimus, *much*; plur. *many* (§ 311)
mūniō, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -ītus, *fortify, defend*
mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. [**mūniō**, *fortify*], *defense,*
fortification
mūrus, -ī, m. *wall*. Cf. **moenia**
mūsica, -ae, f. *music*

Niobē, -ēs, f. *Ni'obe*, the queen of Thebes
 whose children were destroyed by Apollo and
 Diana
nisi, conj. [**nē**, *not*, + **sī**, *if*], *if not, unless,*
except
nōbilis, -e, adj. *well known; noble*
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus [cf. **necō**, *kill*], *hurt,*
injure, with dat. (§ 501.14)
noctū, abl. used as adv. [cf. **nox**, *night*], *at*
night, by night
Nōla, -ae, f. *Nola*, a town in central
 Campania. See map
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — [ne, *not*, + **volō**,
wish], *not to wish, be unwilling* (§ 497)
nōmen, -inis, n. [cf. **nōscō**, *know*], (*means of*
knowing), *name*
nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nōmen**, *name*],
name, call. Cf. **appellō, vocō**
nōn, adv. [**nē**, *not*, + **ūnum**, *one*], *not*.
nōn solum ... sed etiam, *not only ... but also*
nōn-dum, adv. *not yet*
nōn-ne, interrog. adv. suggesting an
 affirmative answer, *not?* (§ 210). Cf. **-ne** and
num
nōs, pers. pron. *we* (see **ego**) (§ 480)
noster, -tra, -trum, possessive adj. and pron.
our, ours. Plur. **nostrī, -ōrum**, m. *our men*
 (§ 98)
novem, indecl. numeral adj. *nine*
novus, -a, -um, adj. *new*.
novae rēs, *a revolution*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, deny, say not (§ 420. a)
negōtium, negō'tī, n. [**nec, not, + ōtium, ease**],
business, affair, matter.

alicui negōtium dare, to employ some one

Nemaeus, -a, -um, adj. *Neme'an, of Neme'a*, in
southern Greece

nēmō, dat. **nēminī** (gen. **nūllūs**, abl. **nūllō**,
supplied from **nūllus**, m. and f. [**nē, not, + homō,**
man], (not a man), no one, nobody

Neptūnus, -ī, m. *Neptune*, god of the sea, brother
of Jupiter

neque, see **nec**

neuter, -tra, -trum (gen. **-trīus**, dat. **-trī**), adj.
neither (of two) (§ 108)

nē-ve, conj. adv. *and not, and that not, and lest*

nihil, n. indecl. [**nē, not, + hīlum, a whit**],
nothing.

nihil posse, to have no power

nihilum, -ī, n., see **nihil**

O

ob, prep. with acc. *on account of*. In compounds it
often means *in front of, against*, or it is intensive.

quam ob rem, for this reason (§ 340)

obses, -idis, m. and f. *hostage*

ob-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus [**ob, against, + sedeō,**
sit], *besiege*

obtimeō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [**ob, against, + teneō,**
hold], *possess, occupy, hold*

occāsiō, -ōnis, f. *favorable opportunity, favorable
moment*

occāsus, -ūs, m. *going down, setting*

occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [**ob, down, + caedō,**
strike], *strike down; cut down, kill*. Cf. **interficiō,**
necō

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ob, completely, +**
capiō, take], *seize, take possession of, occupy*. Cf.

rapio

oc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [**ob, against +**
currō, run], *run towards; meet, with dat.* (§ 426)

ōceanus, -ī, m. *the ocean*

octō, indecl. numeral adj. *eight*

oculus, -ī, m. *eye*

officium, offī'cī, n. *duty*

ōlim, adv. *formerly, once upon a time*

ōmen, -inis, n. *sign, token, omen*

ō-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [**ob, over, past, +**

nox, noctis, f. *night, multā nocte, late at
night*

nūllus, -a, -um (gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**) adj. [**nē,**
not, + ūllus, any], *not any, none, no* (§ 108)

num, interrog. adv. suggesting a negative
answer (§ 210). Cf. **-ne** and **nōnne**. In indir.
questions, *whether*

319

numerus, -ī, m. *number*

numquam, adv. [**nē, not, + umquam, ever**],
never

nunc, adv. *now*. Cf. **iam**

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nūntius,**
messenger], *report, announce* (§ 420. a)

nūntius, nūntī, m. *messenger*

nūper, adv. *recently, lately, just now*

nympha, -ae, f. *nymph*

opīniō, -ōnis, f. [**opīnor, suppose**], *opinion,*
supposition, expectation

oppidānus, -ī, m. [**oppidum, town**],
townsman

oppidum, -ī, n. *town, stronghold*

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj. *suitable,*

opportune, favorable

op-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [**ob,**
against, + premō, press], (*press against*),
crush; surprise

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f. *storming, assault*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ob, against, +**
pugnō fight], *fight against, assault, storm,*

assail

optimē, adv. in superl. degree, compared
bene, melius, optimē, *very well, best of all*
(§ 323)

optimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree,
compared **bonus, melior, optimus**, *best, most
excellent* (§ 311)

opus, -eris, n. *work, labor, task* (§ 464. 2. b)

ōrāculum, -ī, n. [**ōrō, speak**], *oracle*

ōrātor, -ōris, m. [**ōrō, speak**], *orator*

orbis, -is, m. *ring, circle*.

orbis terrārum, the earth, world

orbita, -ae, f. [**orbis, wheel**], *rut*

mittō, *send*], *let go, omit*.
consilium omittere, *give up a plan*
omnīnō, adv. [**omnis**, *all*], *altogether, wholly, entirely*
omnis, -e, adj. *all, every*. Cf. **tōtus**
onerāria, -ae, f. [**onus**, *load*], with **nāvis** expressed or understood, *merchant vessel, transport*
onus, -eris, n. *load, burden*

P

P., abbreviation for **Pūblius**
paene, adv. *nearly, almost*
palūdāmentum, -ī, n. *military cloak*
palūs, -ūdis, f. *swamp, marsh*
pānis, -is, m. *bread*
pār, *paris*, adj. *equal* (§ 471. III)
parātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **parō**, *prepare*], *prepared, ready*
parcō, -ere, **peper' cī** (**parsī**), **parsūrus**, *spare*, with dat. (§ 501.14)
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *obey*, with dat. (§ 501.14)
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare for, prepare; provide, procure*
pars, **partis**, f. *part, share; side, direction*
parum, adv., compared **minus**, **minimē**, *too little, not enough* (§ 323)
parvus, -a, -um, adj., compared **minor**, **minimus**, *small, little* (§ 311)
passus, -ūs, m. *step, pace*.
mille passuum, *thousand paces, mile* (§ 331. b)
pateō, -ēre, **patuī**, —, *lie open, be open; stretch, extend*
pater, -tris, m. *father* (§ 464. 2. a)
patior, -ī, **passus sum**, dep. verb, *bear, suffer, allow, permit*
patria, -ae, f. [cf. **pater**, *father*], *fatherland, (one's) country*
paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *few, only a few*
paulisper, adv. *for a little while*
paulō, adv. *by a little, little*
paulum adv. *a little, somewhat*
pāx, **pācis**, f. (no gen. plur.), *peace*
pecūnia, -ae, f. [**pecus**, *cattle*], *money*

Orcus, -ī, m. *Orcus, the lower world*
ōrdō, -inis, m. *row, order, rank* (§ 247. 2. a)
orīgo, -inis, f. [**orior**, *rise*], *source, origin*
orior, -īrī, **ortus sum**, dep. verb, *arise, rise, begin; spring, be born*
320
ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. [**ōrnō**, *fit out*], *ornament, jewel*
ōrnātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **ōrnō**, *fit out*] *fitted out; adorned*
ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fit out, adorn*

(**posterus**), -a, -um, adj., compared
posterior, **postrēmus** or **postumus**, *following, next* (§ 312)
postquam, conj. *after, as soon as*
postrēmō, adv. [abl. of **postrēmus**, *last*], *at last, finally*. Cf. **dēmum**, **dēnique** (§ 322)
postrīdiē, adv. [**posterō**, *next*, + **diē**, *day*], *on the next day*
postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, demand, require*. Cf. **petō**, **quaerō**, **rogō**
potentia, -ae, f. [**potēns**, *able*], *might, power, force*
322
prae-beō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [prae, *forth*, + **habeō**, *hold*], *offer, give*
praeda, -ae, f. *booty, spoil, plunder*
prae-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus [prae, *before*, + **dīcō**, *tell*], *foretell, predict*
prae-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [prae, *before*, + **faciō**, *make*], *place in command*, with acc. and dat. (§ 501.15)
prae-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [prae, *forward*, + **mittō**, *send*], *send forward*
praemium, **praemī**, n. *reward, prize*
praeruptus, -a, -um [part. of **prae-rumpō**, *break off*], *broken off, steep*
praesēns, -entis, adj. *present, immediate*
praesertim, adv. *especially, chiefly*
praesidium, **praesi'di**, n. *guard, garrison, protection*
prae-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus [prae, *before*, + **sto**, *stand*], (*stand before*), *excel, surpass*, with dat. (§ 501.15); *show, exhibit*
prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [prae, *before*,

pedes, -itis, m. [pēs, *foot*], *foot soldier*
pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pēs, *foot*], *on foot; by land*
peior, peius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, compared **malus, peior, pessimus**, *worse* (§ 311)
pellis, -is, f. *skin, hide*
penna, -ae, f. *feather*
per, prep. with acc. *through, by means of, on account of*. In composition it often has the force of *thoroughly, completely, very* (§ 340)
percussus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **percutiō**, *strike through*], *pierced*
per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [per, *through*, + **dūcō**, *lead*], *lead through*.
fossam perdūcere, *to construct a ditch*
per-exiguus, -a, -um, adj. [per, *very*, + **exiguus**, *small*], *very small, very short*
perfidus, -a, -um, adj. *faithless, treacherous, false*
per-fringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus [per, *through*, **frangō**, *break*], *shatter*
pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus [per, *through*, + **regō**, *conduct*], *go on, proceed, hasten*
periculum, -ī, n. *trial, test; danger*
peristylum, -ī, n. *peristyle, an open court with columns around it*
perītus, -a, -um, adj. *skillful*
perpetuus, -a, -um, adj. *perpetual*
Perseus, -eī, *Perseus, a Greek hero, son of Jupiter and Danaë*
persōna, -ae, f. *part, character, person*
per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus [per, *thoroughly*, + **suādeō**, *persuade*], *persuade, advise, with dat.* (§ 501.14), often with an object clause of purpose (§ 501.41)
321
per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [per, *thoroughly*, + **terreō**, *frighten*], *thoroughly terrify, alarm*
per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [per, *through*, + **veniō**, *come*], *arrive, reach, come to*
pēs, pedis, m. *foot*.
pedem referre, *retreat* (§ 247. 2. a)
pessimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared **malus, peior, pessimus**, *worst* (§ 311)
petō, -ere, -īvī or -iī, -ītus, *strive for, seek, beg, ask; make for, travel to*. Cf. **postulō, quaerō,**

+ **sum, be**], *be over, be in command of, with dat.* (§ 501.15)
praeter, prep. with acc. *beyond, contrary to* (§ 340)
praetereā, adv. [praeter, *besides*, + **eā**, *this*], *in addition, besides, moreover*
praetextus, -a, -um, adj. *bordered, edged*
praetōrium, praetō'ri, n. *praetorium*
prandium, prandī, n. *luncheon*
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *press hard, compress; crowd, drive, harass*
(prex, precis), f. *prayer*
prīmō, adv. [prīmus, *first*], *at first, in the beginning* (§ 322)
primum, adv. [prīmus, *first*], *first*.
quam primum, *as soon as possible*
prīmus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared **prior, prīmus, first** (§ 315)
prīnceps, -cipis, m. [prīmus, *first*, + **capiō**, *take*], *(taking the first place), chief, leader* (§ 464. 1)
prior, prius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, superl., **prīmus, former** (§ 315)
prīstinus, -a, -um, adj. *former, previous*
prō, prep. with abl. *before; for, for the sake of, in behalf of; instead of, as* (§ 209). In composition, *forth, forward*
prō-cēdō, -ere, -cussī, -cessūrus [prō, *forward*, + **cēdō**, *go*], *go forward, proceed*
procul, adv. *far, afar off*
prō-currō, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cur-sus [prō, *forward*, + **currō**, *run*], *run forward*
proelium, proeli, n. *battle, combat*.
proelium committere, *join battle*.
proelium facere, *fight a battle*
profectiō, -ōnis, f. *departure*
proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum, dep. verb. *set out, march*. Cf. **ēgredior, exeō**
prō-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum, dep. verb [prō, *forth*, + **gradior, go**], *go forth, proceed, advance*. Cf. **pergō, prōcēdō**
prōgressus, see **prōgredior**
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [prō, *forth, away from*, + **habeō, hold**], *keep away from, hinder, prevent*
prō-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [prō,

rogō

Pharsālus, -ī, f. *Pharsa'lus* or *Pharsa'lia*, a town in Thessaly, near which

Cassar defeated Pompey, 48 B.C.

philosophia, -ae, f. *philosophy*

philosophus, -ī, m. *philosopher*

pictus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **pingō**, *paint*], *colored, variegated*

pīlum, -ī, n. *spear, javelin* (§ 462. b)

piscīna, -ae, f. [**piscis**, *fish*], *fish pond*

piscis, -is, m. *fish*

pīstor, -ōris, m. *baker*

placeō. -ēre, -uī, -itus, please, be pleasing, with dat. (§ 501.14)

plānitiēs, -ēī, f. [**plānus**, *level*], *plain*

plānus, -a, -um, adj. *level, flat*

plēnus, -a, -um, full

plūrimum, adv. in superl. degree, compared

multum, plūs, plūrimum, very much.

plūrimum valēre, be most influential (§ 322)

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared **multus, plūs, plūrimus, most, very many** (§ 311)

plūs, plūris, adj. in comp. degree, compared **multus, plūs, plūrimus**; sing. n. as substantive, *more*; plur. *more, several* (§ 311)

pluteus, -ī, m. *shield, parapet*

poena, -ae, f. *punishment, penalty*

poēta, -ae, m. *poet*

pompa, -ae, f. *procession*

Pompēiī, -ōrum, m. *Pompeii*, a city of Campania. See map

Pompēius, Pompē'ī, m. *Pompey*, a Roman name

pōmum, -ī, n. *apple*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, put, place.

castra pōnere, pitch camp

pōns, pontis, m. *bridge* (§ 247. 2. a)

popīna, -ae, f. *restaurant*

populus, -ī, m. *people*

Porsena, -ae, m. *Porsena*, king of Etruria, a district of Italy. See map

porta, -ae, f. *gate, door*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bear, carry

portus, -ūs, m. [cf. **porta**, *gate*], *harbor*

possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, have, own, possess

possum, posse, potuī, —, irreg. verb [potis,

forward, + moveō, move], move forward, advance

prō-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prō, forth, + nūntiō, announce], proclaim, declare

prope, adv., compared propius, proxi-mē, nearly. Prep. with acc. *near*

prō-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [prō, forth, + pellō, drive], drive forth; move, impel 323

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [properus, quick], go quickly, hasten. Cf. **contendō, maturō**

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [**prope, near**], *near, neighboring*

propior, -ius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, superl., **proximus, nearer** (§ 315)

propius, adv. in comp. degree, compared **prope, propius, proximē, nearer** (§ 323)

propter, prep. with acc. *on account of, because of* (§ 340)

prō-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus [prō, forth, + scribō, write], proclaim, publish. Cf. **prōnūntiō**

prō-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [prō, forth, + sequor, follow], escort, attend
prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfuturus [prō, for, + sum, be], be useful, benefit, with dat. (§§ 496; 501.15)

prō-tegō, -ere, -tēx=i, -tēctus [prō, in front, + tegō, cover], cover in front, protect

prōvincia, -ae, f. *territory, province*

proximē, adv. in superl. degree, compared **prope, propius, proximē, nearest, next; last, most recently** (§ 323)

proximus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared **propior, proximus, nearest, next** (§ 315)

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [**populus, people**], *of the people, public, res pūblica, the commonwealth*

puella, -ae, f. [diminutive of **puer, boy**], *girl, maiden*

puer, -eri, m. *boy; slave* (§ 462. c)

pugna, -ae, f. *fight, battle.* Cf. **proelium**

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pugna, battle], fight. Cf. **contendō, dīmīcō**

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj. *beautiful, pretty*

able, + sum, I am], *be able, can* (§ 495).
nihil posse, *have no power*
post, prep, with acc. *after, behind* (§ 340)
posteā, adv. [**post**, *after*, + **eā**, *this*], *afterwards*

Q

quā dē causā, *for this reason, wherefore*
quā rē, *therefore, for this reason*
quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, *seek, ask, inquire*. Cf.
petō, postulō, rogō
quālis, -e, interrog. pronom. adj. *of what sort, what kind of*.
talis ... qualis, *such ... as*
quam, adv. *how*; after a comparative, *than* ; with a superlative, translated *as ... as possible*, **quam primum**, *as soon as possible*
quantus, -a, -um, adj. [**quam**, *how*], *how great, how much, tantus ... quantus*, *as great as*
quārtus, -a, -um, numeral adj. [**quattuor**, *four*], *fourth*
quattuor, indecl. numeral adj. *four*
quattuor-decim, indecl. numeral adj. *fourteen*
-que, conj., enclitic, *and* (§ 16). Cf. **ac, atque, et quī, quae, quod**, rel. pron. and adj. *who, which, what, that* (§ 482)
324
quia, conj. *because*. Cf. **quod**
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), indef. pron. and adj. *a certain one, a certain, a* (§ 485).
quidem, adv. *to be sure, certainly, indeed, nē ... quidem*, *not even*
quiēs, -ētis, f. *rest, repose*
quiētus, -a, -um, adj. *quiet, restful*

R

rādīx, -īcis, f. *root; foot*
rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *seize, snatch*
rārō, adv. [**rārus**, *rare*], *rarely*

(§§ 469.b; 304)

Pullō, -ōnis, m. *Pullo*, a centurion
pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *strike, beat*
puppis, -is (acc. **-im**, abl. **-ī**), f. *stern of a ship, deck*
pūrē, adv. [**pūrus**, *pure*], comp. **pūrius**, *purely*
pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cleanse, clean*
purpureus, -a, -um, adj. *purple, dark red*
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *reckon, think* (§ 420.c). Cf. **arbitror, exīstimō**
Pŷthia, -ae, f. *Pythia*, the inspired priestess of Apollo at Delphi

quīndecim, indecl. numeral adj. *fifteen*
quīngentī, -ae, -a, numeral adj. *five hundred*
quīnque, indecl. numeral adj. *five*
quīntus, -a, -um, numeral adj. *fifth*
quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), interrog. pron. and adj. *who? what? which?* (§ 483).
quis (quī), qua (quae), quid (quod), indef. pron. and adj., used after **sī, nisi, nē, num**, *any one, anything, some one, something, any, some* (§ 484).
quisquam, quicquam or quidquam (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron. *any one (at all), anything (at all)* (§ 486).
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), indef. pron. and adj. *each, each one, every* (§ 484).
quō, interrog. and rel. adv. *whither, where*
quō, conj. *in order to, that*, with comp. degree (§ 350).
quod, conj. *because, in that*. Cf. **quia**
quoque, conj., following an emphatic word, *also, too*. Cf. **etiam**
quot-annīs, adv. [**quot**, *how many* + **annus**, *year*], *every year, yearly*
quotiēns, interrog. and rel. adv. *how often? as often as*

rārus, -a, -um, adj. *rare*

re- or **red-**, an inseparable prefix, *again, back, anew, in return*

rebelliō, -ōnis, f. *renewal of war, rebellion*

recēns, -entis, adj. *recent*

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [**re-**, *back*, + **capiō**, *take*], *take back, receive*.

sē recipere, *withdraw, retreat*

re-clinātus, -a, -um, part. of **reclinō**, *leaning back*

re-creātus, -a, -um, part. of **recreō**, *refreshed*

rēctus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **regō**, *keep straight*], *straight, direct*

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *refuse*

red-āctus, -a, -um, part. of **redigō**, *reduced, subdued*

red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus [**red-**, *back*, + **eō**, *go*], *go back, return* (§ 413). Cf. **revertō**

reditus, -ūs, m. [cf. **redeō**, *return*],